



User Guide

Omada Gateway

CONTENTS

Intended Readers	1
Conventions.....	1
More Information	1
Accessing the Gateway.....	2
Determine the Management Method.....	3
Web Interface Access	4
Viewing Status Information.....	6
System Status.....	7
Traffic Statistics	8
Viewing the Interface Statistics	8
Viewing the IP Statistics.....	9
Viewing the DPI Statistics	9
Configuring Wireless Settings (for Wireless models)	11
Overview.....	12
Supported Features	12
Wireless Status.....	13
View Gateway's Wireless Settings	13
View Client Details.....	14
Wireless Settings.....	15
Wireless Settings Access	15
Wireless VLAN.....	19
MAC Filtering	19
Wireless Schedule.....	21
Band Steering.....	22
Mesh Management.....	24
Configuring Network.....	26
Overview.....	27
Supported Features	27
WAN Configuration.....	29
Configuring the Number of WAN Ports	29
Configuring LTE WAN.....	29
Configuring the WAN Connection.....	32
LTE Configuration (for 4G models)	44
Configuring the ISP Upgrade.....	44
Configuring the PIN Management.....	44

Configuring the Data Settings	45
LAN Configuration.....	47
Configuring the IGMP Proxy.....	47
Configuring the LAN Network.....	48
Viewing the DHCP Client List.....	50
Configuring the Address Reservation.....	51
Configuring the LAN DNS.....	51
DSL Setting (for DSL models).....	53
Virtual WAN.....	54
IPTV Configuration.....	56
Configuring the IPTV.....	56
MAC Configuration.....	58
Configuring MAC Address.....	58
Switch Configuration.....	60
Viewing the Statistics.....	60
Configuring Port Mirror.....	61
Configuring Rate Control.....	62
Configuring Port Config.....	62
Viewing Port Status.....	63
VLAN Configuration.....	64
Creating a VLAN.....	64
Configuring the PVID of a Port.....	65
IPv6 Configuration.....	67
Configure IPv6 for WAN / DSL WAN port(s).....	67
Configuring the WAN Connection.....	68
Configuring IPv6 for the LAN Port.....	72
Configuring VoIP (for DSL models)	77
Overview.....	78
Supported Features.....	78
Telephone Number.....	79
Telephony Devices.....	81
Telephone Book.....	82
Telephone Book.....	82
Emergency Number Settings.....	82
Call Log.....	84
Call Forwarding.....	85
Voice Mail.....	86
DND & Call Blocking.....	87

DND	87
Call Blocking	87
TP-Link ID	89
Overview	90
Bind to TP-Link ID	91
Configuring SMS (for 4G models)	92
Overview	93
Supported Features	93
SMS Configuration	94
Configuring SMS Quota	94
Configuring SMS Inbox Policy	95
SMS Inbox/Outbox Management	96
SMS Inbox Message	96
SMS Outbox Message	96
Router Command Configuration	98
USB	99
Overview	100
USB Modem Configuration	101
Configuring USB Modem automatically	101
Configuring the USB Modem manually	103
USB Storage	105
Managing the USB Storage	105
Auto Backup	105
Firmware Upgrade via USB	106
Configuring Preferences	107
Overview	108
IP Group Configuration	109
Adding IP Address Entries	109
Grouping IP Address Entries	110
IPv6 Group Configuration	111
Adding IPv6 Address Entries	111
Grouping IPv6 Address Entries	112
Time Range Configuration	113
VPN IP Pool Configuration	115
Service Type Configuration	116
Location Group Configuration	118
Domain Group Configuration	119
Adding Domain Names	119

Adding Domain Groups	119
Configuring Transmission	121
Overview.....	122
Overview	122
Supported Features	122
NAT Configurations.....	125
Configuring the One-to-One NAT	125
Configuring the Virtual Servers	126
Configuring the Port Triggering	127
Configuring the NAT-DMZ.....	128
Configuring the ALG.....	129
Configuring the Disable NAT	129
Bandwidth Control Configuration.....	131
Quality of Services Configurations.....	133
Configuring Bandwidth Control.....	133
Configuring Class Rule.....	134
Configuring VoIP Prioritization.....	135
Configuring Tag Prioritization.....	135
Session Limit Configurations.....	137
Configuring Session Limit.....	137
Viewing the Session Limit Information.....	138
Load Balancing Configurations	139
Configuring the Load Balancing	139
Configuring the Link Backup.....	140
Configuring the Online Detection	141
Routing Configurations	142
Configuring the Static Routing	142
Configuring the Policy Routing.....	143
Viewing the Routing Table	144
Configuring RIP.....	144
Configuring OSPF	146
Configuring Firewall	152
Overview.....	153
Overview	153
Supported Features	153
Anti ARP Spoofing Configuration	155
Add IP-MAC Binding Entries.....	155
Enable Anti ARP Spoofing.....	158

Attack Defense Configuration.....	160
MAC Filtering Configuration	162
Access Control Configuration	163
Configuring Application Control.....	165
Create Rules.....	165
Add Application Filter.....	165
Enable Deep Packet Inspection.....	166
View Application List.....	166
Configuring Behavior Control	168
Overview.....	169
Overview	169
Supported Features	169
Web Filtering Configuration.....	170
Configure Web Group Filtering.....	170
Configuring URL Filtering.....	172
Web Security Configuration	175
Configuring VPN.....	176
Overview.....	177
Overview	177
Supported Features	178
IPSec VPN Configuration	182
Configuring the IPSec Policy.....	182
Verifying the Connectivity of the IPSec VPN tunnel.....	187
GRE VPN Configuration.....	189
L2TP Configuration	190
Configuring the VPN IP Pool	190
Configuring L2TP Globally	191
Configuring the L2TP Server	191
Configuring the L2TP Client.....	193
(Optional) Configuring the L2TP Users	195
Verifying the Connectivity of L2TP VPN Tunnel	196
PPTP Configuration.....	197
Configuring the VPN IP Pool	197
Configuring PPTP Globally.....	198
Configuring the PPTP Server	198
Configuring the PPTP Client	200
(Optional) Configuring the PPTP Users.....	201
Verifying the Connectivity of PPTP VPN Tunnel.....	202

OpenVPN Configuration.....	204
Configuring the OpenVPN Server.....	204
Configuring the OpenVPN Client.....	206
Viewing the OpenVPN Tunnel.....	207
WireGuard VPN Configuration.....	208
Configuring the WireGuard VPN Server.....	208
Configuring the Peers Settings.....	209
Users Configuration.....	210
Configuring SSL VPN.....	212
Overview.....	213
Quick Setup.....	214
Status Configuration.....	215
Viewing the Status Information.....	215
Viewing Locked Out User.....	216
SSL VPN Server Configuration.....	217
Configuring the SSL VPN Server.....	217
Resource Management.....	219
Configuring the Resources.....	219
Grouping Tunnel Resources.....	220
User Management.....	221
Adding the User List.....	221
Grouping Users.....	222
Authentication.....	223
Adding the Authentication Server List.....	223
Configuring the Radius Server.....	224
Configuring Authentication.....	225
Overview.....	226
Typical Topology.....	226
Portal Authentication Process.....	227
Supported Features.....	227
Local Authentication Configuration.....	229
Configuring the Authentication Page.....	229
Configuring the Local User Account.....	231
Radius Authentication Configuration.....	235
Onekey Online Configuration.....	238
LDAP Configuration.....	240
Configuring LDAP Profiles.....	240
Configuring the Authentication Page.....	241

Guest Resources Configuration.....	243
Configuring the Five Tuple Type.....	243
Configuring the URL Type.....	244
Viewing the Authentication Status	246
Managing Services.....	247
Services	248
Overview	248
Support Features	248
Dynamic DNS Configurations.....	249
Configure and View Peanuthull DDNS	249
Configure and View Comexe DDNS.....	250
Configure and View DynDNS.....	251
Configure and View NO-IP DDNS	253
Custom DDNS	254
TP-Link DDNS	255
UPnP Configuration.....	257
mDNS Configuration.....	258
Reboot Schedule	260
DNS Proxy.....	261
DNSSEC	261
DOH 262	
DOT 263	
DNS Cache	264
DNS Override.....	264
System Tools.....	265
Overview.....	266
Overview	266
Support Features	266
Admin Setup.....	268
Admin Setup	268
Remote Management.....	268
System Settings	269
Management.....	271
Factory Default Restore	271
Backup & Restore	271
Reboot.....	272
Firmware Upgrade	272
Controller Settings.....	273

Enable Cloud-Based Controller Management	273
Configure Controller Inform URL.....	273
CWMP Settings	274
SNMP	276
Diagnostics	277
Diagnostics.....	277
Remote Assistance.....	278
LED Control.....	280
Time Settings.....	281
Setting the System Time	281
Setting the Daylight Saving Time.....	282
System Log.....	285
Mail Notification (for 4G models).....	287

About This Guide

This User Guide provides information for managing Omada gateways. Please read this guide carefully before operation.

Intended Readers

This Guide is intended for network managers familiar with IT concepts and network terminologies.

Conventions

When using this guide, notice that features available in Omada series products may vary by model and software version. Availability of Omada series products may also vary by region or ISP. All images, steps, and descriptions in this guide are only examples and may not reflect your actual experience.

Some models featured in this guide may be unavailable in your country or region. For local sales information, visit <https://www.omadanetworks.com>.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice. Every effort has been made in the preparation of this document to ensure accuracy of the contents, but all statements, information, and recommendations in this document do not constitute the warranty of any kind, express or implied. Users must take full responsibility for their application of any products.

In this Guide, the following conventions are used:

- The symbol  stands for Note. Notes contain suggestions or references that helps you make better use of your device.
- **Menu Name > Submenu Name > Tab** page indicates the menu structure. **Status > Traffic Statistics > Interface Statistics** means the Interface Statistics page under the Traffic Statistics menu option that is located under the Status menu.
- **Bold** font indicates a button, toolbar icon, menu or menu item.

More Information

- The latest software and documentations can be found at Download Center at <https://support.omadanetworks.com/>.
- The Installation Guide (IG) can be found where you find this guide or inside the package of the gateway.
- Specifications can be found on the product page at <https://www.omadanetworks.com>.
- To ask questions, find answers, and communicate with TP-Link users or engineers, please join TP-Link Community.
- Our Technical Support contact information can be found at the Contact Technical Support page at <https://support.omadanetworks.com/>.

Part 1

Accessing the Gateway

CHAPTERS

1. Determine the Management Method
2. Web Interface Access

1 Determine the Management Method

Before building your network, choose a proper method to manage your gateway based on your actual network situation. The gateway supports two configuration options: Standalone Mode or Controller Mode.

■ Controller Mode

If you want to configure and manage a large-scale network centrally, which consists of mass devices such as access points, switches, and gateways, Controller Mode is recommended. In Controller Mode, the gateway can be centrally configured and monitored via Omada SDN Controller.

To prepare the gateway for Omada SDN Controller Management, refer to Controller Settings. For detailed instructions about the network topology in such situations and how to use Omada SDN Controller, refer to the User Guide of Omada SDN Controller. The guide can be found on the download center of our official website:

<https://support.omadanetworks.com/document/>.

■ Standalone Mode

If you have a relatively small-sized network and only one or just a small number of devices need to be managed, Standalone Mode is recommended. In Standalone Mode, you can access and manage the gateway using the GUI (Graphical User Interface, also called web interface in this text). The gateway uses two built-in web servers, HTTP server and HTTPS server, for user authentication.

This User Guide introduces how to configure and monitor the gateway in Standalone Mode.

Note:

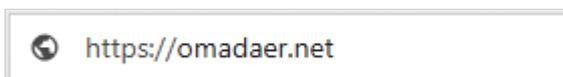
The GUI is inaccessible while the gateway is managed by a controller. To turn the gateway back to Standalone Mode and access its GUI, you can forget the gateway on the controller or reset the gateway.

2 Web Interface Access

The following example shows how to log in via the web browser.

- 1) Connect to the gateway using the default SSID printed on the label at the bottom of the gateway (this method is for wireless gateways only) or connect a PC to a LAN port of the gateway with an RJ45 port properly. If your computer is configured with a fixed IP address, change it to "Obtain an IP address automatically".
- 2) Open a web browser and type `https://omadaer.net` in the address field of the browser, then press the Enter key.

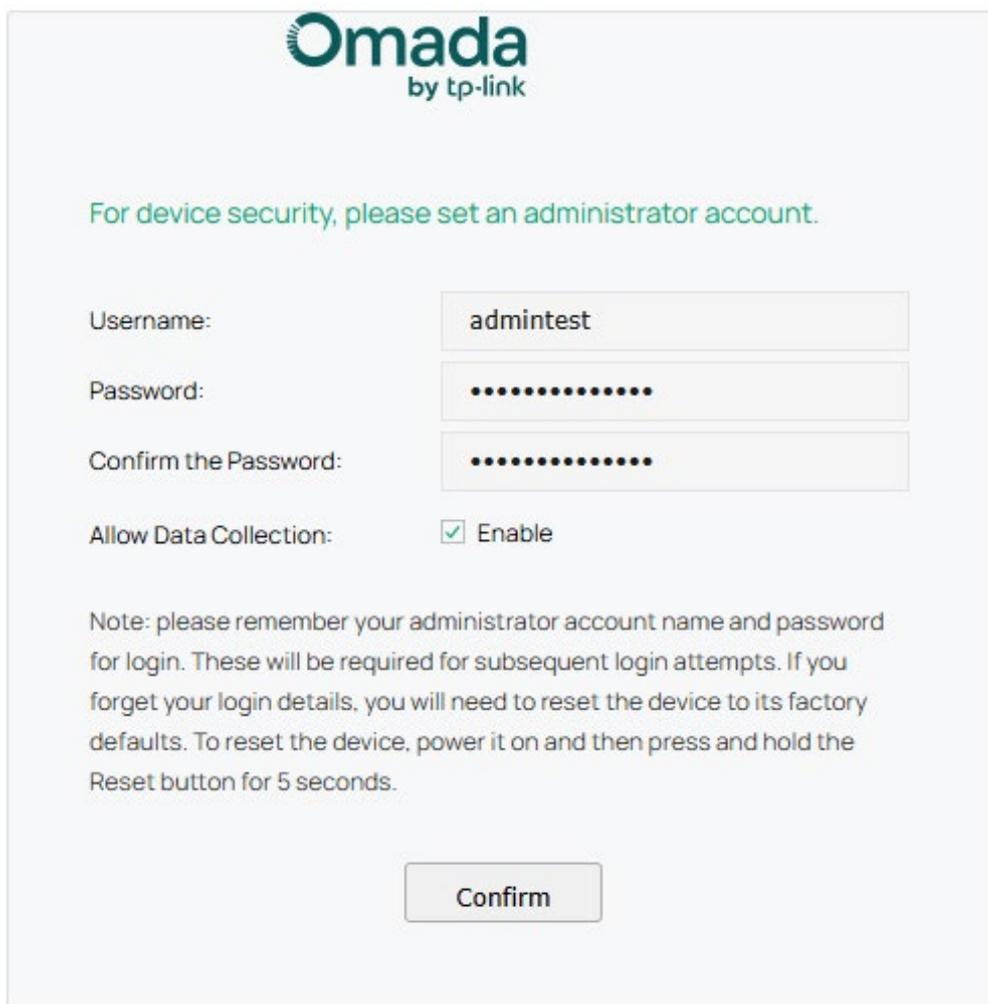
Figure 2-1 Enter the gateway's IP Address In the Browser



A screenshot of a web browser's address bar. The address bar contains the text `https://omadaer.net`. To the left of the text is a small circular icon with a globe, representing the protocol and domain.

- 3) Create a username and a password for subsequent login attempts.

Figure 2-2 Create a Username and a Password



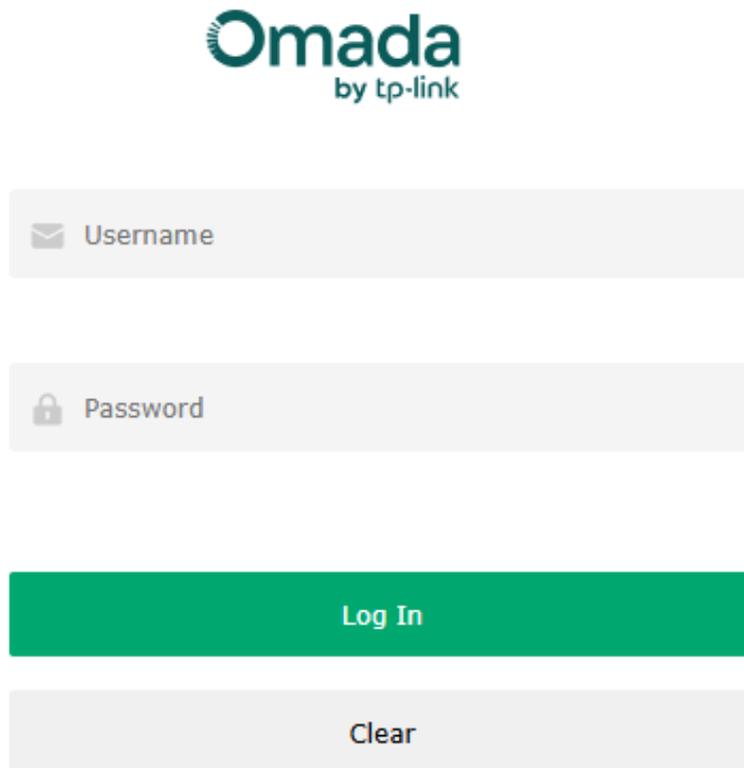
The screenshot shows the Omada by tp-link web interface. At the top, the Omada logo is displayed. Below the logo, a message reads: "For device security, please set an administrator account." The form contains the following fields and options:

- Username:** A text input field containing the text "admintest".
- Password:** A password input field with 12 dots representing the masked password.
- Confirm the Password:** A password input field with 12 dots representing the masked password.
- Allow Data Collection:** A checkbox labeled "Enable" which is checked.

Below the form, a note reads: "Note: please remember your administrator account name and password for login. These will be required for subsequent login attempts. If you forget your login details, you will need to reset the device to its factory defaults. To reset the device, power it on and then press and hold the Reset button for 5 seconds." At the bottom of the form is a "Confirm" button.

- 4) Use the username and password set above to log in to the webpage.

Figure 2-3 Login Authentication



The image shows the login authentication interface for Omada by tp-link. At the top center is the Omada logo, with 'Omada' in a large green font and 'by tp-link' in a smaller black font below it. Below the logo are two input fields: the first is labeled 'Username' with an envelope icon, and the second is labeled 'Password' with a lock icon. Below these fields is a prominent green 'Log In' button, and at the bottom is a light gray 'Clear' button.

- 5) After a successful login, the main page will appear, and you can configure the function by clicking the setup menu on the left side of the screen.

Part 2

Viewing Status Information

CHAPTERS

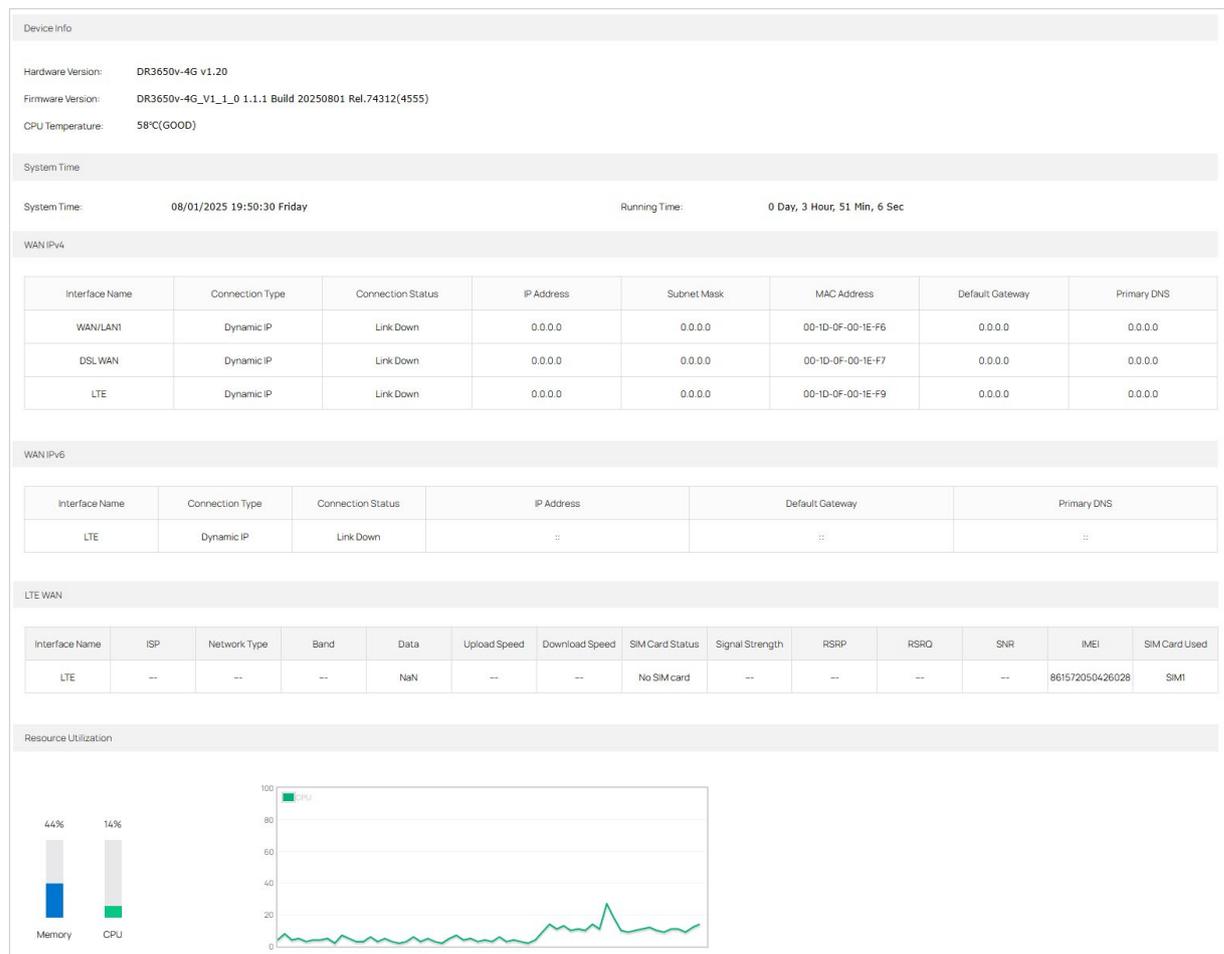
1. System Status
2. Traffic Statistics

1 System Status

The System Status page displays the basic system information (like the hardware version, firmware version and system time) and the running information (like the WAN interface status, memory utilization and CPU utilization). This page may vary depending on your model.

Choose the menu **Status > System Status > System Status** to load the following page.

Figure 1-1 System Status



2 Traffic Statistics

Traffic Statistics displays detailed information relating to the data traffic of interfaces and IP addresses. You can monitor the traffic and locate faults according to this information.

With the Traffic Statistics function, you can:

- View the traffic statistics on each interface.
- Specify an IP address range, and view the traffic statistics of the IP addresses in this range.

2.1 Viewing the Interface Statistics

Choose the menu **Status > Traffic Statistics > Interface Statistics** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Interface Statistics

Interface	TX Rate (KB/s)	RX Rate (KB/s)	TX Packet Rate (Pkt/s)	RX Packet Rate (Pkt/s)	Total TX Bytes	Total RX Bytes	Total TX Packets	Total RX Packets
--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Enable **Interface Statistics**, then you can view the detailed traffic information of each interface in the statistics list.

TX Rate (KB/s) Displays the rate for transmitting data in kilobytes per second.

RX Rate (KB/s) Displays the rate for receiving data in kilobytes per second.

TX Packet Rate (Pkt/s) Displays the rate for transmitting data in packets per second.

RX Packet Rate (Pkt/s) Displays the rate for receiving data in packets per second.

Total TX Bytes Displays the bytes of packets transmitted on the interface.

Total RX Bytes Displays the bytes of packets received on the interface.

Total TX Packets Displays the number of packets transmitted on the interface.

Total RX Packets Displays the number of packets received on the interface.

You can enable **Auto Refresh** or click **Refresh** to get the latest statistics information, or click **Clear** to clear the current statistics information.

2.2 Viewing the IP Statistics

Choose the menu **Status > Traffic Statistics > IP Statistics** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 IP Statistics

Follow these steps to view the traffic statistics of the specific IP addresses:

- 1) In the **Settings** section, enable IP Statistics and specify an IP range to monitor.

Enable IP Statistics

Check the box to enable IP Statistics.

IP Range

Specify an IP range. The gateway will monitor the packets whose source IP addresses or destination IP addresses are in this range, and display the statistics information in Statistics List.

- 2) In the **Statistics List** section, view the detailed traffic information of the IP addresses.

IP Address Number

Displays the number of active users whose IP address is in the specified IP range.

TX Rate (KB/s)

Displays the rate for transmitting data in kilobytes per second.

RX Rate (KB/s)

Displays the rate for receiving data in kilobytes per second.

TX Packet Rate (Pkt/s)

Displays the rate for transmitting data in packets per second.

RX Packet Rate (Pkt/s)

Displays the rate for receiving data in packets per second.

Total TX Bytes

Displays the bytes of packets transmitted by the user who owns the IP address.

Total RX Bytes

Displays the bytes of packets received by the user who owns the IP address.

You can enable **Auto Refresh** or click **Refresh** to get the latest statistics information, or click **Clear** to clear the current statistics information.

2.3 Viewing the DPI Statistics

If you have enabled the Deep Packet Inspection (DPI) feature on **Firewall > Application Control**, you can view the DPI statistics here.

Choose the menu **Status > Traffic Statistics > DPI Statistics** to load the following page. You can view the traffic by categories and application.

Figure 2-3 DPI Statistics



Part 3

Configuring Wireless Settings (for Wireless models)

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. Wireless Status
3. Wireless Settings
4. Mesh Management

1 Overview

The Wireless module provides basic wireless functions, including checking wireless connection details, configuring wireless parameters, setting up mesh network and more.

1.1 Supported Features

Status

You can check the parameters of the gateway's wireless network (SSID lists, radio settings, and radio traffic) and the details about the connected clients.

Wireless Settings

Wireless networks enable wireless clients to access the internet. Once a wireless network is set up, the gateway typically broadcast the network name (SSID) in the air, and wireless clients can connect to the network and access the internet. In this module, you can configure wireless settings, set up wireless VLAN, configure MAC filtering, set wireless schedule and enable Band Steering.

Mesh

Enable the Mesh feature and synchronize the mesh network settings to the Omada app.

2 Wireless Status

You can check the parameters of the gateway's wireless network (SSID lists, radio settings, and radio traffic) and the details about the connected clients.

2.1 View Gateway's Wireless Settings

Choose the menu **Wireless > Status > Wireless** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Viewing the Wireless Settings

SSID List										
ID	SSID Name	Clients	Band	Security	Portal	VLAN ID	Guest Network	Down (Bytes)	Up (Bytes)	Refresh
1	admin_Omada_Wi-Fi	--	2.4GHz	WPA-PSK	Disable	Disable	Disable	904	0	
2	admin_Omada_Wi-Fi	--	5GHz	WPA-PSK	Disable	Disable	Disable	1.8k	0	

Radio Settings		2.4GHz 5GHz
2.4GHz Wireless Radio:	Enable	
Channel Frequency:	1 / 2412MHz	
Channel Width:	20MHz	
IEEE802.11 Mode:	b/g/n/ax mixed	
Max TX Rate:	286.8Mbps	
Tx Power:	20dBm	

Radio Traffic				2.4GHz 5GHz
Rx Packets:	0	Tx Packets:	8	
Rx Bytes:	0	Tx Bytes:	904	
Rx Dropped Packets:	0	Tx Dropped Packets:	0	
Rx Errors:	0	Tx Errors:	0	

SSID List

Displays the 2.4GHz/5GHz SSIDs you have created and their details. Click Refresh to get the latest status of the SSID List.

Radio Settings

The gateway works on the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands. Click 2.4GHz | 5GHz to select a band first, and view the following parameters.

Radio Traffic

The gateway works on the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands. Click 2.4GHz | 5GHz to select a band first, and view the following parameters.

2.2 View Client Details

Choose the menu **Wireless > Status > Client** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 Viewing Client Details

Client List											
ID	Hostname	IP Address	MAC Address	Band	SSID	Active Time	Up (Bytes)	Down (Bytes)	RSSI (dBm)	Rate (Mbps)	Action
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

User | Guest Refresh

Block Client List					
ID	Hostname	MAC Address	Up (Bytes)	Down (Bytes)	Action
-	-	-	-	-	-

Refresh

Client List

Click User | Guest to select the client type (User or Guest), and view the following parameters. Click Refresh to get the latest status of the Client List.

Block Client List

Allows you to view the information of the clients that have been blocked, and resume the client's access. Click Refresh to get the latest status of the Block Client List.

3 Wireless Settings

Wireless networks enable wireless clients to access the internet. Once a wireless network is set up, the gateway typically broadcast the network name (SSID) in the air, and wireless clients can connect to the network and access the internet. In this module, you can configure wireless settings, set up wireless VLAN, configure MAC filtering, set wireless schedule and enable Band Steering.

3.1 Wireless Settings Access

Wireless Settings Access allows you to create wireless networks on the 2.4GHz or 5GHz band, view and edit the information of the wireless networks that have been created, and configure the wireless networks' advanced settings including Radio Settings, Load Balance, Airtime Fairness, etc.

To complete wireless settings access, follow these steps:

- 1) Click 2.4GHz | 5GHz to select a frequency band.
- 2) Configure the information and features of the wireless network.

Choose the menu **Wireless > Wireless Settings > Wireless Settings Access** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Configuring the Wireless Settings Access

2.4GHz | 5GHz

2.4GHz Wireless Radio

2.4GHz Wireless Radio: Enable

USB 3.0 Interference Reduction: Enable

Note:
The USB 3.0 will affect the wireless 2.4GHz performance, enabling USB 3.0 Interference Reduction will improve 2.4GHz wireless performance, but lower USB 3.0 data transfer speed

Save

2.4GHz SSIDs

ID	SSID	VLAN ID	SSID Broadcast	Security Mode	Guest Network	Action
1	admin_Omada_Wi-Fi	Disable	Enable	WPA-Personal	Disable	

2.4GHz Wireless Advanced Settings

Radio Settings | Load Balance | Airtime Fairness | More Settings

Wireless Mode: 802.11b/g/n/ax mixed

Channel Width: Auto

Channel: Auto

Tx Power (EIRP): 20 dBm(5-27)

Note:
The EIRP transmit power includes the antenna gain.

Save

2.4GHz/5GHz Wireless Radio

Check the box to enable the wireless radio of the chosen band before configuring the wireless parameters. Only when this option is enabled will the wireless radio on 2.4GHz or 5GHz band works.

USB 3.0 Interference Reduction	Enabling USB 3.0 Interference Reduction will improve 2.4GHz wireless performance, but lower USB 3.0 data transfer speed
2.4GHz/5GHz SSIDs	Click Add to create a new SSID on the chosen band, configure the parameters, and click OK.
2.4GHz/5GHz Wireless Advanced Settings	<p>Radio Settings</p> <p>Radio settings directly control the behavior of the radio in the gateway and its interaction with the physical medium; that is, how and what type of signal the gateway emits.</p> <p>Load Balance</p> <p>Load Balance allows you to limit the maximum number of clients who can access the gateway's wireless network. In this way, you can achieve a rational use of network resources.</p> <p>Airtime Fairness</p> <p>With Airtime Fairness enabled, each client connected to the gateway's wireless network can get the same amount of time to transmit data, avoiding low-data-rate clients occupying too much network bandwidth.</p> <p>More Settings</p> <p>To improve the network's stability, reliability, and communication efficiency, configure the following parameters based on your needs.</p>

Configuring Advanced Settings

■ Radio Settings

Configure the following parameters of the chosen band, and click **Save**.

Wireless Mode	Select the IEEE 802.11 mode the radio uses. For 2.4GHz: 802.11n only - Only 802.11n clients can connect to the gateway. 802.11b/g mixed - Both 802.11b and 802.11g clients can connect to the gateway. 802.11b/g/n mixed - All of 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n clients operating in the 2.4GHz frequency can connect to the gateway. 802.11b/g/n/ax mixed - All of 802.11b, 802.11g, 802.11n, and 802.11ax clients operating in the 2.4GHz frequency can connect to the gateway. Note that 802.11ax is only available for certain devices. For 5GHz: 802.11n/a mixed - Both 802.11n clients and 802.11a clients operating in the 5GHz frequency can connect to the gateway. 802.11n/ac mixed - Both 802.11n clients and 802.11ac clients operating in the 5GHz frequency can connect to the gateway. 802.11a/n/ac mixed - All of 802.11a, 802.11n, and 802.11ac clients operating in the 5GHz frequency can connect to the gateway. 802.11a/n/ac/ax mixed - All of 802.11a, 802.11n, 802.11ac, and 802.11ax clients operating in the 5GHz frequency can connect to the gateway. Note that 802.11ax is only available for certain devices.
Channel Width	Select the channel width of the gateway. For the 2.4GHz band, available options include Auto, 20MHz, and 40MHz. For the 5GHz band, available options include Auto, 20MHz, 40MHz, 80MHz, and 160MHz.
Channel	Select the channel used by the gateway. For example, 1/2412MHz means that the channel is 1 and the frequency is 2412MHz. By default, the channel is selected as Auto, and we recommend that you keep the default setting.
Tx Power (EIRP)	Specify the transmit power value. If this value is set to be larger than the maximum transmit power that is allowed by the local regulation, the regulated maximum transmit power will be applied in the actual situation.

 **Note:**

- Note that in most cases, it is unnecessary to use the maximum transmit power. Specifying a larger transmit power than needed may cause interference to the neighborhood. Also, it consumes more power and reduces the longevity of the device.
-

■ Load Balance

Configure the following parameters of the chosen band, and click **Save**.

Load Balance	Check the box to enable Load Balance.
---------------------	---------------------------------------

Maximum Associated Clients	Specify the maximum number of clients who can connect to a radio band (either 2.4GHz or 5GHz) of the gateway at the same time. While the number of connected clients has reached the limit and there are more clients requesting to access the network, the gateway will disconnect those with weaker signals. The value of Maximum Associated Clients is from 1-127, and the default is 50.
-----------------------------------	--

■ Airtime Fairness

We recommend you check the box to enable Airtime Fairness under multi-rate wireless networks. In this way, the faster clients can get more time for the data transmission and the network's overall throughput can be improved.

■ More Settings

Configure the following parameters of the chosen band, and click **Save**.

Beacon Interval	Beacons are transmitted periodically by the gateway to announce the presence of a wireless network for the clients. Beacon Interval determines the time interval of the beacons sent by the gateway. You can specify a value between 40 and 100ms. The default is 100ms.
------------------------	--

DTIM Period	<p>The DTIM (Delivery Traffic Indication Message) is contained in some Beacon frames. It indicates whether the gateway has buffered data for client devices. The DTIM Period indicates how often the clients served by this gateway should check for buffered data still on the gateway awaiting pickup.</p> <p>You can specify the value between 1-255 Beacon Intervals. The default value is 1, indicating that clients check for buffered data at every beacon. An excessive DTIM interval may reduce the performance of multicast applications, so we recommend you keep the default value.</p>
--------------------	---

RTS Threshold	<p>RTS/CTS (Request to Send/Clear to Send) is used to improve the data transmission efficiency of the network with hidden nodes, especially when there are lots of large packets to be transmitted.</p> <p>When the size of a data packet is larger than the RTS Threshold, the RTS/CTS mechanism will be activated. As a result, before sending a data packet, the client will send an RTS packet to the gateway to request data transmitting. And then the gateway will send a CTS packet to inform other clients to delay their data transmitting. In this way, packet collisions can be avoided.</p> <p>For a busy network with hidden nodes, a low threshold value will help reduce interference and packet collisions. But for a not-so-busy network, a too low threshold value will cause bandwidth wasting and reduce the data throughput. The recommended and default value is 2347 bytes.</p>
----------------------	---

Fragmentation Threshold	<p>The fragmentation function can limit the size of packets transmitted over the network. If the size of a packet exceeds the Fragmentation Threshold, the fragmentation function is activated and the packet will be fragmented into several packets.</p> <p>Fragmentation helps improve network performance if properly configured. However, a too low fragmentation threshold may result in poor wireless performance caused by the extra work of dividing up and reassembling of frames and increased message traffic. The recommended and default value is 2346 bytes.</p>
--------------------------------	---

OFDMA

OFDMA enables multiple users to transmit data simultaneously, and thus greatly improves speed and efficiency. Only when your clients also support OFDMA, can you fully enjoy the benefits.

3.2 Wireless VLAN

Wireless VLAN is used to set VLANs for wireless networks. With this feature, the gateway can work together with the switches supporting 802.1Q VLAN. Traffic from the clients in different wireless networks is added with different VLAN tags according to the VLAN settings of the wireless networks. Then the wireless clients in different VLANs cannot directly communicate with each other. Note that the traffic from the wired clients will not be added with VLAN tags.

To complete wireless VLAN, select the specific SSID in the VLAN ID list to configure the VLAN parameters and click **Save**.

Choose the menu **Wireless > Wireless Settings > VLAN** to load the following page.

Figure 3-2 Configuring the Wireless VLAN

VLAN ID					
ID	SSID Name	Band	VLAN		VLAN ID
1	admin_Omada_Wi-Fi	2.4GHz	Disable	▼	0
2	admin_Omada_Wi-Fi	5GHz	Disable	▼	0

Note:
To configure the VLAN, please select the corresponding LAN network.

VLAN

Select Enable to enable the VLAN function on the SSID.

VLAN ID

Specify the VLAN ID for the wireless network. Every VLAN ID represents a different VLAN. 0 is used to disable VLAN tagging.

 **Note:**

- You can manage the VLAN IDs in Network > VLAN.

3.3 MAC Filtering

MAC Filtering is used to allow or block clients with specific MAC addresses to access the network. With this feature, you can effectively control clients' access to the wireless network according to your needs.

To complete MAC filtering settings, follow these steps:

- 1) In **Settings**, check the box of **Enable MAC Filtering**.
- 2) In **Station MAC Group**, click **Create Groups**, create a new MAC group, and add the MAC address of the hosts to be filtered to the MAC group.
- 3) In **MAC Filtering Association**, configure the filtering rule

Choose the menu **Wireless > Wireless Settings > MAC Filtering** to load the following page.

Figure 3-3 Configuring MAC Filtering

Settings

Enable MAC Filtering: Enable

Save

Station MAC Group

+ Create Groups

MAC Filtering Association

ID	SSID	Band	MAC Group Name	Action
1	admin_Omada_Wi-Fi	2.4GHz	None	Deny
2	admin_Omada_Wi-Fi	5GHz	None	Deny

Note:
Deny: Block access from the stations in the MAC Group list.
Allow: Only allow access from the stations in the MAC Group list.

Save

In **Settings** section, Check the box to enable **MAC Filtering**, and click **Save**.

In **Station MAC Group** section, click **Create Groups**, and two boxes will appear, which allow you to create a MAC group first, and add the MAC addresses to the MAC group.

Add (above the Operation column)

Click **Add** to create a new MAC group. Click to select a group to move the arrow to point the other box to add MAC addresses.

MAC Group

Specify a name for the MAC Group, and click **OK**.

MAC Group Name

Displays all the MAC groups you have created.

Add (above the Modify column)

Click to add MAC address to the specific group.

MAC Address

Enter the MAC address to be filtered in the format XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX, and OK. In the same way, you can add more MAC addresses to the selected MAC group. And you can also view all the added MAC addresses here.

Modify

Edit or delete the selected MAC address.

In **MAC Filtering Association** section, specify the filtering rule, then click **Save**.

SSID

Displays the SSIDs that you can set the filtering rule.

Band

Displays the SSIDs that you can set the filtering rule.

MAC Group Name

Select a MAC group to be filtered from the drop-down list.

Action

Specify the filtering rule (Allow/Deny) for the selected MAC group from the drop-down list, and click **Save**.

3.4 Wireless Schedule

The Scheduler feature allows the gateway's wireless network to automatically turn on or off at the time you set. As a time-based function, Scheduler takes effect according to the gateway's system time. You can set or view the system time in **System Tools > Time Settings**.

To complete wireless schedule settings, follow these steps:

- 1) In **Settings**, check the box to enable **Scheduler**, and select the **Association Mode**.
- 2) In **Profile**, click **Create Profiles**, create a new scheduler profile, and add time range items to the profile. Note that if there are several time range items in one profile, the time range of this profile is the sum of all of these time ranges.
- 3) In **Scheduler Association**, configure the scheduler rule.

Choose the menu **Wireless > Wireless Settings > Scheduler** to load the following page.

Figure 3-4 Configuring Scheduler

Settings

Scheduler: Enable

Association Mode: Associated with SSID

Save

Profile

+ Create Profiles

Scheduler Association

ID	SSID	Band	Profile Name	Action
1	admin_Omada_Wi-Fi	2.4GHz	None	Radio Off
2	admin_Omada_Wi-Fi	5GHz	None	Radio Off

Save

In **Settings** section, Check the box to enable **Scheduler**, and select the **Association Mode**.

Associated with SSID The scheduler profile will be applied to the specific SSID.

Associated with AP The profile will be applied to all SSIDs on the gateway.

In **Profile**, click **Create Profiles**, and two boxes will appear, which allow you to create a scheduler profile first, and add time range items to the profile.

Add (of the scheduler profile box) Click **Add** to create a new scheduler profile. Click to select a profile to move the arrow to point the other box to add a time range.

Profile Specify a name for the scheduler profile, and click **OK**.

Profile Name Displays all the scheduler profiles you have created.

Operation	Edit or delete the selected scheduler profile's information..
Add (of the time range items box)	Click to add the time range to the specific profile.
Day	Select on which day(s) (Weekday/Weekend/Everyday/Custom) the scheduler will take effect.
Time	If you check the box of 24 hours, the scheduler rule will take effect for 24 hours on each selected day.
Start Time	Specify when the scheduler rule will take effect.
End Time	Specify when the scheduler rule will end.

In **Scheduler Association** section, specify the rule, then click **Save**.

SSID	Displays the SSIDs that you can set the scheduler rule.
Band	Displays which frequency band the SSID belongs to.
Profile Name	Select a scheduler profile for the SSID.
Action	Select the scheduler rule (Radio On/Radio Off), and click Save .

3.5 Band Steering

With Band Steering enabled, dual-band clients will be steered to the 5GHz band according to the configured parameters. Band Steering adjusts the number of clients on 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands. As the 5GHz band supports a larger number of non-overlapping channels and is less noisy, the network performance can be improved.

To run the Band Steering function on an SSID, you need to create the SSIDs on both the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands and make sure they have the same name, security mode, and wireless password.

To complete the Band Steering settings, check the box to enable **Band Steering**, and configure the parameters to balance the clients on both frequency bands, then click **Save**.

Connection Threshold	Defines the maximum number of clients connected to the 5GHz band. The value of Connection Threshold is from 2 to 40, and the default is 20.
----------------------	---

**Different
Threshold**

Defines the maximum difference between the number of clients on the 5GHz band and 2.4GHz band. The value of Different Threshold is from 1 to 8, and the default is 4.

When the following two conditions are both met, the gateway prefers to refuse the connection request on 5GHz band and no longer steer other clients to the 5GHz band:

1. The number of clients on the 5GHz band reaches the Connection Threshold value.
2. The difference between the number of clients on the 2.4GHz band and 5GHz band reaches the Different Threshold value.

Max Failures

When the gateway's 5GHz band is overloaded, if a client repeatedly attempts to associate with the gateway on the 5GHz band and the number of rejections reaches the value of Max Failures, the gateway will accept the request.

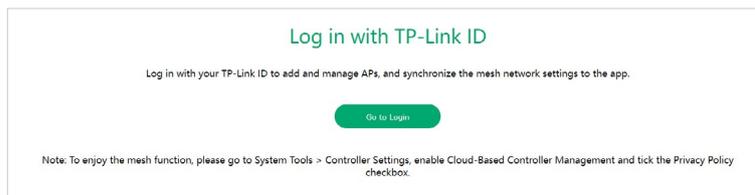
The value is from 0 to 100, and the default is 10.

4 Mesh Management

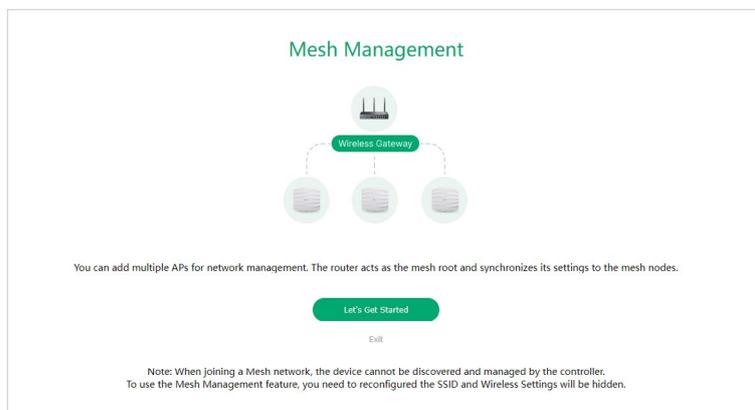
Log in with your TP-Link ID to add and manage APs, and synchronize the mesh network settings to the Omada app.

Choose the menu **Wireless > Mesh**. To complete Mesh Management, follow these steps:

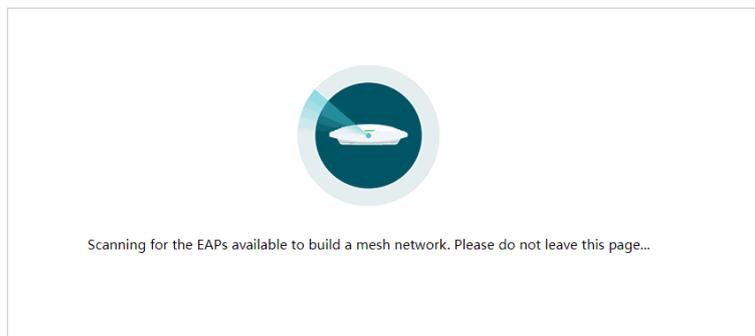
1) Click **Go to Login** to configure mesh network and log in with TP-Link ID



2) Click **Let's Get Started** to start setting up the mesh network.



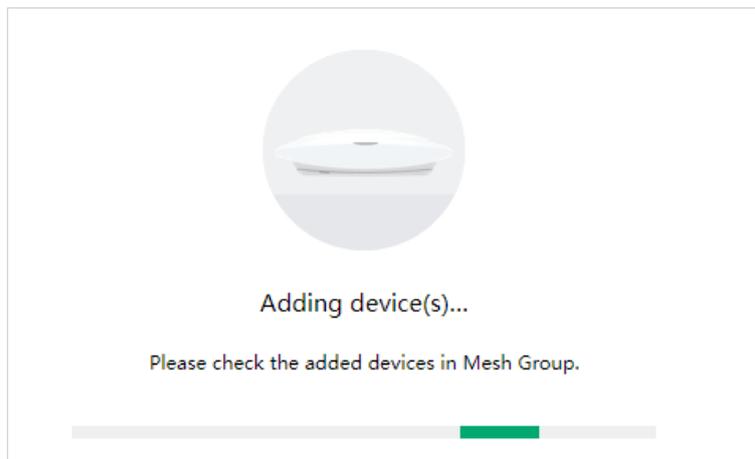
3) The system will scan for the EAPs available to build a mesh network.



4) Click **Add Device** to add the selected device to the mesh network. The gateway will be the mesh root.



5) Adding device to the mesh network.



6) Configure the Device Account Settings.

Devices Account Settings

Username: admin

Password: [masked] [eye icon]

Next

7) Configure the network settings.

←

Network Configuration

SSID: [empty]

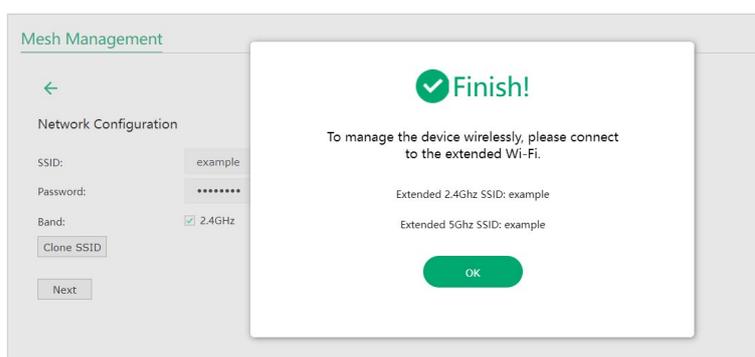
Password: [masked] [eye icon]

Band: 2.4GHz 5GHz

Clone SSID

Next

8) Done. The mesh network is set up. To manage the device wirelessly, connect to the extended network.



Part 4

Configuring Network

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. WAN Configuration
3. LTE Configuration (for 4G models))
4. LAN Configuration
5. DSL Setting (for DSL models)
6. Virtual WAN
7. IPTV Configuration
8. MAC Configuration
9. Switch Configuration
10. VLAN Configuration
11. IPv6 Configuration

1 Overview

The Network module provides basic gateway functions, including WAN connection, DHCP service, VLAN and more.

1.1 Supported Features

WAN

WAN ports connect to the internet. You can configure multiple WAN ports for your network. Each WAN port has its own connection type and parameters, which you should configure according to the requirements of your ISP.

LTE (for 4G models)

You can upgrade the ISP information, configure the PIN code and data settings.

LAN

When the LAN ports of the gateway connect to your local network devices, the gateway functions as the gateway, which allows those devices to connect to the internet.

DSL Settings (for DSL models)

Configure and change DSL setting individually according to your actual network.

Virtual WAN

Configure multiple virtual WANs mapped to one physical WAN based on your network needs.

IPTV

Configure IPTV settings to enable Internet/IPTV/Phone service provided by your ISP (internet service provider).

MAC

You can change the default MAC address of the WAN port according to your needs.

Switch

The gateway supports some basic switch port management functions, like Port Mirror, Rate Control, Flow Control and Port Negotiation, to help you monitor the traffic and manage the network effectively.

VLAN

VLAN enables you to divide the LAN into multiple logical networks and control the traffic among them in a convenient and flexible way. The LAN can be logically segmented by departments, application, or types of users, without regard to geographic locations.

IPv6

IPv6 is the next-generation network protocol following IPv4. You can configure IPv6 network for the gateway if your ISP supports IPv6. IPv6 network won't cause conflict with your current IPv4 network.

2 WAN Configuration

WAN ports connect to the internet. You can configure multiple WAN ports for your network. Each WAN port has its own connection type and parameters, which you should configure according to the requirements of your ISP.

To complete WAN configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) In WAN Mode, determine the number of WAN ports according to your needs.
- 2) Configure WAN connection for the WAN port(s). You can configure WAN connection for multiple WANs, and each WAN port has its own Internet Connection Type and parameters.

2.1 Configuring the Number of WAN Ports

Choose the menu **Network > WAN > WAN Mode** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Configuring the WAN Mode



WAN Mode

Determine the number of WAN ports according to your needs. To enable a port as WAN port, check the box of the desired port. To configure multiple WAN ports, enable the ports. Only LTE, WAN, WAN/LAN, DSL WAN, SFP WAN and USB Modem can function as WAN port.

Note:

Any change to the number of WAN ports may lead your current configurations to be lost. Make sure you have backed up your configurations before proceeding.

2.2 Configuring LTE WAN

Choose the menu **Network > WAN > LTE WAN** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Configuring the LTE WAN

WAN Interface

Internet Status: **Disconnected**

Mobile Data:

NAT:

SIM Priority: SIM1 SIM2

Note: If multiple consecutive failover attempts are made and the internet is not restored, the automatic switch to the other SIM card will take longer. For such cases we recommend manually changing the SIM Priority.

SIM1 Dial-Up Settings

Data Roaming:

Network Mode:

Band:

Network Search:

Profile Name:

PDP Type:

APN Type:

APN:

Username: (Optional, 0-31 characters)

Password: (Optional, 0-31 characters)

Authentication Type:

SIM1 Failover

Dial-Up Time Out: (100-3552s)

[Create Profile](#) Click this button to create a new dial-up profile. Up to 8 profiles can be added.

SIM2 Dial-Up Settings

Data Roaming:

Network Mode:

Band:

Network Search:

Profile Name:

PDP Type:

APN Type:

APN:

Username: (Optional, 0-31 characters)

Password: (Optional, 0-31 characters)

Authentication Type:

SIM2 Failover

Dial-Up Time Out: (100-3552s)

[Create Profile](#) Click this button to create a new dial-up profile. Up to 8 profiles can be added.

In the **WAN Interface** section, enable the desired features and enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

Mobile Data

It is enabled by default. You can disable it to block internet access.

NAT

This feature is enabled by default. It is recommended to keep the default setting. If you disable it, you may not be able to access the internet.

SIM Priority

Set which SIM card is used first. SIM Priority takes effect only when the device is powered on and the priority is changed. If only one SIM card is inserted, this card is used by default.

Note:

If you are not familiar with this, keep the default option or contact your carrier for more details.

In the **Dial-up Settings** section, enter the corresponding parameters for SIM1 and SIM2, and then click **Save**. Note that some models only support one SIM card.

Data Roaming	It is disabled by default. If disabled, data service usage is not allowed while roaming. If enabled, data service is allowed while roaming, but significant roaming charges may apply.
Network Mode	You can choose a network mode according to your mobile network standard and current network conditions. 4G Preferred, 4G Only and 3G Only are supported.
Band	<p>The device supports two methods of band selection - Auto and Manual.</p> <p>Auto - The device will automatically choose available LTE frequency bands nearby based on advanced band selection algorithms.</p> <p>Manual - The device will automatically search for available LTE frequency bands. Then you can select specific bands as needed.</p>
Network Search	<p>The device provides two types of network connection - Auto and Manual. Please select the connection mode as you need.</p> <p>Auto - The device will automatically establish connection once it's started.</p> <p>Manual - When you select Manual and click Search, the device will search for mobile networks automatically and you can choose a network with better performance to access, which is related or have corporation with the network provider of your SIM.</p>
Create Profile	Click to create a new dial-up profile. Up to 8 profiles can be added.
Profile Name	The name of the profile you've selected.
PDP Type	Select the type of your PDP (Packet Data Protocol). PDP Type is the type of the IP address assigned to the PDP during 'PDP context activation' procedure. You can select IPv4, or IPv6, or IPv4&IPv6.
APN Type	Access Point Name, provided by your ISP. You need to set APN only after selecting the static APN type. You are recommended to keep the default value.
Username/ Password	Enter the username and password provided by your ISP. These fields are case-sensitive. You are recommended to keep the default value.
Authentication Type	<p>Some ISPs need a specific authentication type, please confirm it with your ISP or keep the default value.</p> <p>None - No authentication is required.</p> <p>PAP - Password Authentication Protocol. The protocol allows a device to establish authentication with a peer using a two-way handshake. Select this option if your ISP requires this authentication type.</p> <p>CHAP - Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol. The protocol allows a device to establish authentication with a peer using a three-way handshake and periodically checking the peer's identity. Select this option if your ISP requires this authentication type.</p>
SIM1/SIM2 Failover Dial-Up Time Out	Set the dial-up timeout (100 to 3552 seconds). If the connection is not successfully established within the specified time, the gateway will use the other SIM card to connect to the internet.

2.3 Configuring the WAN Connection

The gateway supports five connection types: **Static IP**, **Dynamic IP**, **PPPoE**, **L2TP**, **PPTP**, you can choose one according to the requirements of your ISP.

Static IP: Select this type if your ISP has offered you a fixed IP address.

Dynamic IP: Select this type if your ISP automatically assigns the IP address.

PPPoE: Select this type if your ISP provides you with a PPPoE account.

L2TP: Select this type if your ISP provides you with an L2TP account.

PPTP: Select this type if your ISP provides you with a PPTP account.

Note:

The number of configurable WAN ports is decided by **WAN Mode**. To configure **WAN Mode**, refer to [Configuring the Number of WAN Ports](#).

■ Configuring the Dynamic IP

Choose the menu **Network > WAN > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 Configuring the Dynamic IP

Connection Configuration		Connection Status	
Connection Type:	Dynamic IP	Connection Status:	Disconnected
Host Name:	(0-50 characters, optional)	IP Address:	0.0.0.0
Upstream Bandwidth:	100000 Kbps (100-1000000)	Subnet Mask:	0.0.0.0
Downstream Bandwidth:	350000 Kbps (100-1000000)	Default Gateway:	0.0.0.0
MTU:	1500 (576-1500)	Primary DNS:	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS:	(Optional)	Secondary DNS:	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS:	(Optional)		
Vlan:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable		
Vlan ID:	4093 (1-4094)		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Get IP using Unicast DHCP		
Priority (802.1q):	0		
<input type="checkbox"/> Advanced Settings			
<input type="button" value="WAN IP Alias"/>			
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Connect"/> <input type="button" value="Disconnect"/>			

In the **Connection Configuration** section, select the connection type as Dynamic IP. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

Connection Type Choose the connection type as Dynamic IP if your ISP has offered you a fixed IP address..

Host Name (Optional) Enter a name for the gateway. It is null by default.

Upstream Bandwidth Specify the upstream bandwidth of the WAN port. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Upstream Bandwidth on **Transmission > Bandwidth Control** page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of each WAN port after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on **Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings** page.

Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the downstream bandwidth of the WAN port. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Downstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of each WAN port after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.
MTU	Specify the MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) of the WAN port. MTU is the maximum data unit transmitted in the physical network. When Dynamic IP is selected, MTU can be set in the range of 576-1500 bytes. The default value is 1500.
Primary/Secondary DNS	(Optional) Enter the IP address of the DNS server provided by your ISP.
VLAN	Add the WAN port to a VLAN. Generally, you don't need to manually configure it unless required by your ISP.
VLAN ID	If VLAN for the WAN port is enabled, you need to enter a VLAN ID. Then the WAN port is automatically assigned to the VLAN. By default, the egress rule of the VLAN is UNTAG, so the packets are transmitted by the WAN port without VLAN tags. If you want the WAN port to transmit packets with VLAN tag, you need to configure its egress rule as TAG. To configure VLANs, go to Network > VLAN > VLAN .
Get IP using Unicast DHCP	The broadcasting requirement may not be supported by a few ISPs. Select this option if you can not get the IP address from your ISP in the normal DHCP process. This option is not required generally.
Priority	Priority is only available when Internet VLAN is enabled. The Internet VLAN Priority function helps to prioritize the internet traffic based on your needs. You can determine the priority level for the traffic by specifying the tag. The tag ranges from 0 to 7. None means the packet will be forwarded without any operation.
WAN IP Alias	WAN IP Alias supports configuring multiple IP addresses on one WAN port, and these IP addresses can be used to configure virtual server and other functions. Note: The WAN IP Alias configuration will take effect only when you click Save to apply the connection settings.

DHCP Options

Click Advanced Settings to display the option parameters.

Option 28: Specify the broadcast address to use on the client's subnet.

Option 50: Set request IP options for the DHCP client.

Option 51: Set the IP address lease time option for the the DHCP client.

Option 55: Set the request parameter list options for the DHCP client. The client uses this option to indicate which network configuration parameters need to be obtained from the server. The content of this option is the option value corresponding to the parameter requested by the client.

Option 60: Enter the value for DHCP Option 60. DHCP clients use this field to optionally identify the vendor type and configuration of a DHCP client. Mostly it is used in the scenario where the APs apply for different IP addresses from different servers according to the needs.

Option 61: Set client identification options. Currently the default is the LAN MAC address.

**Connect/
Disconnect**

Click the button to active/terminate the connection.

■ Configuring the Static IP

Choose the menu **Network > WAN > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

Figure 2-3 Configuring the Static IP

Connection Configuration		Connection Status	
Connection Type:	Static IP	Connection Status:	Disconnected
IP Address:		IP Address:	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask:		Subnet Mask:	0.0.0.0
Default Gateway:		Default Gateway:	0.0.0.0
Upstream Bandwidth:	100000 Kbps (100-1000000)	Primary DNS:	0.0.0.0
Downstream Bandwidth:	350000 Kbps (100-1000000)	Secondary DNS:	0.0.0.0
MTU:	1500 (576-1500)		
Primary DNS:			
Secondary DNS:			
Vlan:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable		
Vlan ID:	4093 (1-4094)		
Priority (8021q):	0		
WAN IP Alias			
Save			

In **Connection Configuration** section, select the connection type as Static IP. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

Connection Type

Choose the connection type as Static IP if your ISP has offered you a fixed IP address.

IP Address

Enter the IP address provided by your ISP.

Subnet Mask

Enter the subnet mask provided by your ISP.

Default Gateway

Enter the default gateway provided by your ISP.

Upstream Bandwidth	Specify the upstream bandwidth of the WAN port. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Upstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of each WAN port after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.
Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the downstream bandwidth of the WAN port. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Downstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of each WAN port after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.
MTU	<p>Specify the MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) of the WAN port.</p> <p>MTU is the maximum data unit transmitted in the physical network. When Static IP is selected, MTU can be set in the range of 576-1500 bytes. The default value is 1500.</p>
Primary/Secondary DNS	(Optional) Enter the IP address of the DNS server provided by your ISP.
VLAN	Add the WAN port to a VLAN. Generally, you don't need to enable VLAN for the WAN port unless required by your ISP.
VLAN ID	If VLAN for the WAN port is enabled, you need to enter a VLAN ID. Then the WAN port is automatically assigned to the VLAN. By default, the egress rule of the VLAN is UNTAG, so the packets are transmitted by the WAN port without VLAN tags. If you want the WAN port to transmit packets with VLAN tag, you need to configure its egress rule as TAG. To configure VLANs, go to Network > VLAN > VLAN .
Priority	Priority is only available when Internet VLAN is enabled. The Internet VLAN Priority function helps to prioritize the internet traffic based on your needs. You can determine the priority level for the traffic by specifying the tag. The tag ranges from 0 to 7. None means the packet will be forwarded without any operation.
WAN IP Alias	<p>WAN IP Alias supports configuring multiple IP addresses on one WAN port, and these IP addresses can be used to configure virtual server and other functions.</p> <p>Note: The WAN IP Alias configuration will take effect only when you click Save to apply the connection settings.</p>

■ Configuring the PPPoE

Choose the menu **Network > WAN > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

Figure 2-4 Configuring the PPPoE

Connection Configuration		Connection Status	
Connection Type:	PPPoE	Connection Status:	Disconnected
Username:		IP Address:	0.0.0.0
Password:		Subnet Mask:	0.0.0.0
Connection Mode:	Connect Automatically	Default Gateway:	0.0.0.0
Upstream Bandwidth:	100000 Kbps (100-1000000)	Primary DNS:	0.0.0.0
Downstream Bandwidth:	350000 Kbps (100-1000000)	Secondary DNS:	0.0.0.0
MTU:	1500 (576-1492)	Secondary Connection:	
MRU:	1500 (576-1492)	IP Address:	0.0.0.0
MSS Clamping:	Auto	Subnet Mask:	0.0.0.0
Service Name:	(1-128 characters, optional)		
Primary DNS:	(Optional)		
Secondary DNS:	(Optional)		
Vlan:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable		
Vlan ID:	4093 (1-4094)		
Priority (802.1q):	0		
Secondary Connection:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> Dynamic IP <input type="radio"/> Static IP		
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Connect"/> <input type="button" value="Disconnect"/>			

In the **Connection Configuration** section, select the connection type as PPPoE. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

Connection Type Choose the connection type as PPPoE if your ISP provides you with a PPPoE account.

Username Enter the PPPoE username provided by your ISP.

Password Enter the PPPoE password provided by your ISP.

Connection Mode Choose the connection mode, including **Connect Automatically**, **Connect Manually** and **Time-Based**.

Connect Automatically: The gateway will activate the connection automatically when the gateway reboots or the connection is down.

Connect Manually: You can manually activate or terminate the connection.

Time-Based: During the specified period, the gateway will automatically activate the connection.

Time Choose the time range for automatic connection. To create the time range, go to **Preferences > Time Range > Time Range**.

Upstream Bandwidth Specify the upstream bandwidth of the WAN port. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Upstream Bandwidth on **Transmission > Bandwidth Control** page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of each WAN port after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on **Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings** page.

Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the downstream bandwidth of the WAN port. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Downstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of each WAN port after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.
MTU	Specify the MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) of the WAN port. MTU is the maximum data unit transmitted in the physical network. When PPPoE is selected, MTU can be set in the range of 576-1492 bytes. The default value is 1492.
MRU	Specify the MRU (Maximum Receive Unit) of the WAN port. MRU is the largest packet size the gateway will allow a computer on the network to receive. When PPPoE is selected, MRU can be set in the range of 576-1492 bytes. The default value is 1492.
Service Name	(Optional) Enter the service name. This parameter is not required unless provided by your ISP. It is null by default.
Primary/ Secondary DNS	(Optional) Enter the IP address of the DNS server provided by your ISP.
VLAN	Add the WAN port to a VLAN. Generally, Generally, you don't need to enable VLAN for the WAN port unless required by your ISP.
VLAN ID	If VLAN for the WAN port is enabled, you need to enter a VLAN ID. Then the WAN port is automatically assigned to the VLAN. By default, the egress rule of the VLAN is UNTAG, so the packets are transmitted by the WAN port without VLAN tags. If you want the WAN port to transmit packets with VLAN tag, you need to configure its egress rule as TAG. To configure VLANs, go to Network > VLAN > VLAN .
Priority	Priority is only available when Internet VLAN is enabled. The Internet VLAN Priority function helps to prioritize the internet traffic based on your needs. You can determine the priority level for the traffic by specifying the tag. The tag ranges from 0 to 7. None means the packet will be forwarded without any operation.
WAN IP Alias	WAN IP Alias supports configuring multiple IP addresses on one WAN port, and these IP addresses can be used to configure virtual server and other functions. Note: The WAN IP Alias configuration will take effect only when you click Save to apply the connection settings.
Secondary Connection	Secondary connection is required by some ISPs. Select the connection type required by your ISP. None: Select this if the secondary connection is not required by your ISP. Dynamic IP: Select this if your ISP automatically assigns the IP address and subnet mask for the secondary connection. Static IP: Select this if your ISP provides you with a fixed IP address and subnet mask for the secondary connection.
Connect/ Disconnect	Click the button to active/terminate the connection.

■ Configuring the L2TP

Choose the menu **Network > WAN > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

Figure 2-5 Configuring the L2TP

Connection Configuration		Connection Status	
Connection Type:	L2TP	Connection Status:	Disconnected
Username:		IP Address:	0.0.0.0
Password:		Subnet Mask:	0.0.0.0
Connection Mode:	Connect Automatically	Default Gateway:	0.0.0.0
Upstream Bandwidth:	100000 Kbps (100-1000000)	Primary DNS:	0.0.0.0
Downstream Bandwidth:	350000 Kbps (100-1000000)	Secondary DNS:	0.0.0.0
MTU:	1500 (576-1460)	Secondary Connection	
MSS Clamping:	Auto	IP Address:	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS:	(Optional)	Subnet Mask:	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS:	(Optional)	Default Gateway:	0.0.0.0
Vlan:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Primary DNS:	0.0.0.0
Vlan ID:	4093 (1-4094)	Secondary DNS:	0.0.0.0
Priority (8021q):	0		
Secondary Connection:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Dynamic IP <input type="radio"/> Static IP		
VPN Server IP/Domain Name:			
IP Address:			
Subnet Mask:			
Default Gateway:	(Optional)		
Primary DNS:	(Optional)		
Secondary DNS:	(Optional)		
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Connect"/> <input type="button" value="Disconnect"/>			

In the **Connection Configuration** section, select the connection type as L2TP. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

Connection Type Choose the connection type as L2TP if your ISP provides you with an L2TP account.

Username Enter the L2TP username provided by your ISP.

Password Enter the L2TP password provided by your ISP.

Connection Mode Choose the connection mode, including **Connect Automatically**, **Connect Manually** and **Time-Based**.

Connect Automatically: The gateway will activate the connection automatically when the gateway reboots or the connection is down.

Connect Manually: You can manually activate or terminate the connection.

Time-Based: During the specified period, the gateway will automatically activate the connection.

Time Choose the time range for automatic connection. To create the time range, go to **Preferences > Time Range > Time Range**.

Upstream Bandwidth Specify the upstream bandwidth of the WAN port. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Upstream Bandwidth on **Transmission > Bandwidth Control** page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of each WAN port after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on **Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings** page.

Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the downstream bandwidth of the WAN port. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Downstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of each WAN port after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.
MTU	<p>Specify the MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) of the WAN port.</p> <p>MTU is the maximum data unit transmitted in the physical network. When L2TP is selected, MTU can be set in the range of 576-1460 bytes. The default value is 1460.</p>
Primary/Secondary DNS	(Optional) Enter the IP address of the DNS server provided by your ISP.
VLAN	Add the WAN port to a VLAN. Generally, you don't need to enable VLAN for the WAN port unless required by your ISP.
VLAN ID	If VLAN for the WAN port is enabled, you need to enter a VLAN ID. Then the WAN port is automatically assigned to the VLAN. By default, the egress rule of the VLAN is UNTAG, so the packets are transmitted by the WAN port without VLAN tags. If you want the WAN port to transmit packets with VLAN tag, you need to configure its egress rule as TAG. To configure VLANs, go to Network > VLAN > VLAN .
Priority	Priority is only available when Internet VLAN is enabled. The Internet VLAN Priority function helps to prioritize the internet traffic based on your needs. You can determine the priority level for the traffic by specifying the tag. The tag ranges from 0 to 7. None means the packet will be forwarded without any operation.
WAN IP Alias	<p>WAN IP Alias supports configuring multiple IP addresses on one WAN port, and these IP addresses can be used to configure virtual server and other functions.</p> <p>Note: The WAN IP Alias configuration will take effect only when you click Save to apply the connection settings.</p>
Secondary Connection	<p>Select the secondary connection type according to the requirements of your ISP. The secondary connection is required for L2TP connection. The gateway will get some necessary information after the secondary connection succeeded. The information will be used in the L2TP connection process.</p> <p>Dynamic IP: If you select the secondary connection type as Dynamic IP, the gateway set up the secondary connection dynamically.</p> <p>Static IP: If you select the secondary connection type as Static IP, you need to configure IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway, Primary/Second DNS for the secondary connection.</p>
VPN Server/Domain Name	Enter the VPN Server/Domain Name provided by your ISP.
IP Address	Enter the IP address provided by your ISP for the secondary connection.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask provided by your ISP for the secondary connection.
Default Gateway	Enter the default gateway provided by your ISP for the secondary connection.

**Primary/
Secondary DNS**

Enter the primary/secondary DNS provided by your ISP for the secondary connection.

**Connect/
Disconnect**

Click the button to active/terminate the connection.

■ Configuring the PPTP

Choose the menu **Network > WAN > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

Figure 2-6 Configuring the PPTP

Connection Configuration		Connection Status	
Connection Type:	PPTP	Connection Status	Disconnected
Username:		IP Address	0.0.0.0
Password:		Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0
Connection Mode:	Connect Automatically	Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
Upstream Bandwidth:	100000 Kbps (100-1000000)	Primary DNS	0.0.0.0
Downstream Bandwidth:	350000 Kbps (100-1000000)	Secondary DNS	0.0.0.0
MTU:	1500 (576-1420)	Secondary Connection	
MSS Clamping:	Auto	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS:	(Optional)	Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS:	(Optional)	Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
Vlan:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Primary DNS	0.0.0.0
Vlan ID:	4093 (1-4094)	Secondary DNS	0.0.0.0
Priority (802.1q):	0		
Secondary Connection:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Dynamic IP <input type="radio"/> Static IP		
VPN Server IP/Domain Name:			
IP Address:			
Subnet Mask:			
Default Gateway:	(Optional)		
Primary DNS:	(Optional)		
Secondary DNS:	(Optional)		
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Connect"/> <input type="button" value="Disconnect"/>			

In **Connection Configuration** section, select the connection type as PPTP. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

Connection Type

Choose the connection type as PPTP if your ISP provides you with a PPTP account.

Username

Enter the PPTP username provided by your ISP.

Password

Enter the PPTP password provided by your ISP.

**Connection
Mode**

Choose the connection mode, including **Connect Automatically**, **Connect Manually** and **Time-Based**.

Connect Automatically: The gateway will activate the connection automatically when the gateway reboots or the connection is down.

Connect Manually: You can manually activate or terminate the connection.

Time-Based: During the specified period, the gateway will automatically activate the connection.

Time

Choose the time range for automatic connection. To create the time range, go to **Preferences > Time Range > Time Range**.

Upstream Bandwidth	Specify the upstream bandwidth of the WAN port. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Upstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of each WAN port after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.
Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the downstream bandwidth of the WAN port. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Downstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of each WAN port after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.
MTU	Specify the MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) of the WAN port. MTU is the maximum data unit transmitted in the physical network. When PPTP is selected, MTU can be set in the range of 576-1420 bytes. The default value is 1420.
Primary/Secondary DNS	(Optional) Enter the IP address of the DNS server provided by your ISP.
VLAN	Add the WAN port to a VLAN. Generally, you don't need to enable VLAN for the WAN port unless required by your ISP.
VLAN ID	If VLAN for the WAN port is enabled, you need to enter a VLAN ID. Then the WAN port is automatically assigned to the VLAN. By default, the egress rule of the VLAN is UNTAG, so the packets are transmitted by the WAN port without VLAN tags. If you want the WAN port to transmit packets with VLAN tag, you need to configure its egress rule as TAG. To configure VLANs, go to Network > VLAN > VLAN .
VLAN ID	If VLAN for the WAN port is enabled, you need to enter a VLAN ID. Then the WAN port is automatically assigned to the VLAN. By default, the egress rule of the VLAN is UNTAG, so the packets are transmitted by the WAN port without VLAN tags. If you want the WAN port to transmit packets with VLAN tag, you need to configure its egress rule as TAG. To configure VLANs, go to Network > VLAN > VLAN .
Priority	Priority is only available when Internet VLAN is enabled. The Internet VLAN Priority function helps to prioritize the internet traffic based on your needs. You can determine the priority level for the traffic by specifying the tag. The tag ranges from 0 to 7. None means the packet will be forwarded without any operation.
Secondary Connection	Select the secondary connection type according to the requirements of your ISP. The secondary connection is required for PPTP connection. The gateway will get some necessary information after the secondary connection succeeded. The information will be used in the PPTP connection process. Dynamic IP: If you select the secondary connection type as Dynamic IP, the gateway set up the secondary connection dynamically. Static IP: If you select the secondary connection type as Static IP, you need to configure IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway, Primary/Second DNS for the secondary connection.
VPN Server/Domain Name	Enter the VPN Server/Domain Name provided by your ISP.
IP Address	Enter the IP address provided by your ISP for the secondary connection.

Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask provided by your ISP for the secondary connection.
Default Gateway	Enter the default gateway provided by your ISP for the secondary connection.
Primary/ Secondary DNS	Enter the primary/secondary DNS provided by your ISP for the secondary connection.
Connect/ Disconnect	Click the button to active/terminate the connection.

■ Configuring DSL WAN

Choose the menu **Network > WAN > DSL WAN** to load the following page.

Figure 2-7 Configuring DSL WAN

Connection Configuration		Connection Status	
Location:	Argentina	Connection Status	Disconnected
ISP List:	Other	IP Address	0.0.0.0
DSL Modulation Type:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> VDSL <input type="radio"/> ADSL	Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0
Connection Type:	Dynamic IP	Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
Host Name:	<input type="text"/> (0-50 characters, optional)	Primary DNS	0.0.0.0
Upstream Bandwidth:	100000 Kbps (100-100000)	Secondary DNS	0.0.0.0
Downstream Bandwidth:	350000 Kbps (100-350000)	Line Status	--
MTU:	1500 (576-1500)	DSL Modulation Type	--
Primary DNS:	<input type="text"/> (Optional)	Annex Type	--
Secondary DNS:	<input type="text"/> (Optional)	Upstream	
MER:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Current Training Rate (kbps)	--
Vlan:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Max Rate (kbps)	--
Vlan ID:	4093 (1-4094) <input type="checkbox"/> Get IP using Unicast DHCP	SNR Margin (dB)	--
Priority (802.1q):	0	Line Attenuation (dB)	--
WAN IP Alias		Errors (pkts)	--
Save Connect Disconnect		Downstream	
		Current Training Rate (kbps)	--
		Max Rate (kbps)	--
		SNR Margin (dB)	--
		Line Attenuation (dB)	--
		Errors (pkts)	--

In the **Connection Configuration** section, enter the corresponding parameters.

Location	Choose your location.
ISP List	Select your ISP from the list. If you cannot find your ISP, select other to manually configure the DSL parameters.
DSL Modulation Type	Select the DSL modulation type according to your DSL service.
VPI	When DSL Modulation Type is set to ADSL, enter the VPI assigned by your ISP to specify the virtual path between endpoints in an ATM network.
VCI	When DSL Modulation Type is set to ADSL, enter the VCI assigned by your ISP to specify the virtual channel endpoints in an ATM network.
Connection Type	Choose the connection type. The configuration for each type is the same as that for WAN connection.
MER	If your ISP requires MER for network connection (e.g., Sky VDSL), enable MER and enter the Username and Password.

3 LTE Configuration (for 4G models)

Configure the LTE related parameters for your LTE network.

- Configure the ISP Upgrade.
- Configure the PIN Management.
- Configure the Data Settings

3.1 Configuring the ISP Upgrade

Choose the menu **Network > LTE > ISP Upgrade** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Configuring the ISP Upgrade

- **To upgrade ISP information**

- 1) Download the latest ISP upgrade file from the Support page at www.omadanetworks.com to your computer.
- 2) Click **Browse** to locate and select the latest file.
- 3) Click **Upgrade**.

3.2 Configuring the PIN Management

Choose the menu **Network > LTE > PIN Management** to load the following page.

Figure 3-2 Configuring the PIN Management

SIM Card Status Displays the status of your SIM card.

PIN Lock	You can select whether to enable this function or not. Once the PIN Lock function is enabled, every time you start the device with this SIM card inserted, you need to enter the PIN code. But you can go to enable the Auto-unlock PIN function, which could save you this trouble.
Auto-unlock PIN	When the PIN code is required upon device restarting, it will be validated automatically once. If validation failed, you need to enter the PIN code on the PIN Management page.
PIN	Personal Identification Number of the SIM card. It consists of 4-8 digits.
PUK	PIN Unlocked Key. It consists of 8 digits.
Remaining Attempts	Displays how many attempts are left for you to try entering the PIN or PUK code. You have 3 attempts at most for entering the PIN code and 10 attempts at most for entering the PUK code.

3.3 Configuring the Data Settings

You can view the data statistics and set a data limit to better control your data usage so that you will not exceed the data package provided by your carrier.

The data usage is for reference only, and the specific data shall be subject to the operator.

Choose the menu **Network > LTE > Data Settings** to load the following page.

Figure 3-3 Configuring the Data Settings

The screenshot displays two sections for configuring data settings for SIM1 and SIM2. Each section includes a 'Total Used' indicator (0.000MB), a 'Count Mode' selector (Total Count selected), a 'Data Limit' toggle (ON for SIM1, OFF for SIM2), a 'Total Allowance' input field (0.000 MB), and an 'SMS Alert' toggle (OFF for both). A 'Save' button is present at the bottom of each section.

Select a SIM card and follow the steps below to set the data limit:

- 1) Toggle on **Data Limit**.
- 2) Enter the total allowance provided by your carrier. When your data usage reaches the allowance, the device will automatically disconnect from the internet.
- 3) Enter the usage alert percentage. When your data usage reaches this proportion of the total allowance, you will receive a message.
- 4) Enter the phone number via which you will receive the alert message. You will also receive a message if the device automatically disconnects from the internet when your data usage reaches the allowance.
- 5) Toggle on **Monthly Count** and enter the start date if you want to view the monthly data used and set a monthly data limit.

6) Click **Save**.

Parameters

Monthly Used/ Total Used	Displays the total traffic/monthly traffic used according to the set traffic billing method.
Correct	Correct the traffic used (according to the billing method, total traffic/monthly traffic).
Count Mode	Select the count mode, total count or monthly count. Monthly count needs to select start date for each monthly count cycle.
Start Date	The start date of the monthly count cycle. For example: 2nd, indicating that the monthly count cycle is from the 2nd of this month to the 1st of the next month.
Total Allowance/ Monthly Allowance	How much traffic is allowed to use for a month or in total.
SMS Alert	The SMS alert switch of the data limit, if the data limit function is turned on and the SMS alert is turned on, when the usage alert of the set data allowance is reached or the set data allowance is reached, the SMS alert will be sent.
Usage Alert	Usage alert. For example, when 80% of the data allowance is reached, an SMS alert will be sent.
Alert SMS Phone Number	The number for receiving alert SMS.
Send Text Message	Send a test SMS to confirm that the number can be used to receive alert SMS.

4 LAN Configuration

The LAN port is used to connect to the LAN clients, and works as the default gateway for these clients. You can configure the DHCP server for the LAN clients, and clients will automatically be assigned to IP addresses if the method of obtaining IP addresses is set as "Obtain IP address automatically".

For LAN configuration, you can:

- Configure the IGMP Proxy and the IP address of the LAN port.
- Configure the DHCP server.
- Reserve IP addresses for certain LAN clients

4.1 Configuring the IGMP Proxy

Choose the menu **Network > LAN > LAN** to load the following page.

Figure 4-1 Configuring the IGMP Proxy

The screenshot shows a configuration page for IGMP Proxy. In the 'Settings' section, the 'IGMP Proxy' checkbox is checked and labeled 'Enable'. The 'IGMP Version' dropdown is set to 'V2', and the 'IGMP Interface' dropdown is set to 'DSL WAN'. A 'Save' button is present. A note states: 'IGMP only takes effect when WAN mode is enabled for port WAN.' Below the settings is a 'Network List' table with the following data:

	ID	Name	Vlan	Isolation Status	IP Address	Subnet Mask	DHCP Server	DHCP Relay	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	LAN	1	Deisolated	192.168.188.1	255.255.255.0	Enabled	Disabled	

In the **Settings** section, enable IGMP Proxy, select the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

IGMP Proxy

If you want the local network devices to receive multicast data from the Internet, check the box to enable IGMP Proxy. This feature is used to detect whether there is any multicast member connected to the LAN ports.

IGMP Version

Configure the IGMP version as V2 or V3 according to your ISP.

IGMP Interface

Select the interface on which the IGMP Proxy takes effect.

Note:

- IGMP only takes effect when WAN mode is enabled for port WAN.

4.2 Configuring the LAN Network

Choose the menu **Network > LAN > LAN** to load the following page.

Figure 4-2 Configuring the LAN network

The screenshot shows the LAN configuration page. At the top, there are settings for IGMP Proxy:

- IGMP Proxy: Enable
- IGMP Version: V2 (dropdown)
- IGMP Interface: DSL WAN (dropdown)

 Below these settings is a 'Save' button and a note: 'Note: IGMP only takes effect when WAN mode is enabled for port WAN.'

The 'Network List' section contains a table with the following data:

										● Isolate ● Deisolate ● Add
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	Vlan	Isolation Status	IP Address	Subnet Mask	DHCP Server	DHCP Relay	Operation	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	LAN	1	Deisolated	192.168.188.1	255.255.255.0	Enabled	Disabled		

In the **Network List** section, set up the LAN network or click **Add** to add new networks, and configure the related parameters. You can select the desired LAN networks and click the **Isolate** or **Deisolate** button to change the network isolation status.

Name	Set up the LAN network or click Add to add new networks, and configure the related parameters.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the LAN port. To make your local network devices connect to the internet, you need to set the IP address of the LAN port as the default gateway of those devices.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the LAN port (255.255.255.0 by default). The IP addresses of all devices which connect to the LAN ports should be in the same subnet as the IP address of the LAN port.
Mode	Specify whether to use a normal VLAN or bridge VLANs. When bridge is selected, you can configure multiple VLANs for devices to access the LAN network.
Network Isolation	Click the checkbox to isolate this network from other networks. Devices on this network cannot send traffic to other networks.
VLAN	Specify the VLAN of the LAN port, only the devices in the specified VLAN can access and manage the gateway.

**DHCP Mode --
DHCP Server**

If you select DHCP Server as DHCP Mode, the DHCP server of the gateway will assign IP addresses to the LAN clients. Configure the following parameters.

Status: Check the box to enable DHCP Server.

Starting IP Address / Ending IP Address: Enter the starting IP address and ending IP address of the DHCP server's IP pool. The IP pool defines the range of IP addresses that can be assigned to the LAN clients. Note that the starting IP address and ending IP address should be in the same subnet as the IP address of the LAN port.

Lease Time: Specify the lease time for DHCP clients. Lease time defines how long the clients can use the IP address assigned by the DHCP server. Generally, the client will automatically request the DHCP server for extending the lease time before the lease expired. If the request fails, the client will have to stop using that IP address when the lease finally expired, and try to get a new IP address from another DHCP server.

Default Gateway: (Optional) Enter the default gateway which is assigned by the DHCP server. It is recommended to enter the IP address of the LAN port.

Default Domain: (Optional) Enter the domain name of your network.

Primary DNS / Secondary DNS: (Optional) Enter the DNS server address provided by your ISP. If you are not clear, please consult your ISP.

Click Advanced Settings to display the DHCP Options.

DHCP Next Server: Specify the server IP address that the DHCP client will use in the next step.

DHCP NTP Server: (Option 42) Enter one or two DHCP NTP Server addresses to get the system time from internet. Use "," to divide addresses.

DHCP Network Boot: (Option 67) Enter the value for DHCP Option 67. It specifies the boot file name.

DHCP Time Offset: (Option 2) Enter the time offset of the DHCP client's subnet in seconds from the UTC time.

DHCP TFTP Server: (Option 66) Enter the TFTP server address for file transfer.

DHCP WPAD URL: (Option 252) Enter the DHCP WPAD (Web Proxy Auto-Discovery) URL for the DHCP client to configure its proxy settings.

**DHCP Mode --
DHCP Server**

Option60: (Optional) Enter the value for DHCP Option 60. DHCP clients use this field to optionally identify the vendor type and configuration of a DHCP client. Mostly, it is used in the scenario where the APs apply for different IP addresses from different servers according to the needs. For detailed information, please consult the vendor. For TP-Link, this entry should be TP-Link.

Option138: (Optional) Enter the value for DHCP Option 138. It is used in discovering the devices by the Omada controller.

Option150: (Optional) Enter the value for DHCP Option 150. It specifies the TFTP server information and supports multiple TFTP server IP addresses.

Option159: (Optional) Enter the value for DHCP Option 159. This option is used to configure a set of ports bound to a shared IPv4 address.

Option160: (Optional) Enter the value for DHCP Option 160. This option is used to configure DHCP captive portal.

Option176: (Optional) Enter the value for DHCP Option 176. This option is used to configure parameters for IP phones.

Option242: (Optional) Enter the value for DHCP Option 242. This option is used to provide the TMS address automatically.

**DHCP Mode --
DHCP Relay**

If you select DHCP Relay as DHCP Mode, the gateway will relay DHCP requests from LAN clients to the DHCP server in another network. Then the DHCP server will assign IP addresses to the LAN clients. Configure the following parameters.

Status: Check the box to enable DHCP Relay.

Server Address: Enter the IP address of the DHCP server.

4.3 Viewing the DHCP Client List

Choose the menu **Network > LAN > DHCP Client List** to load the following page.

Figure 4-3 Viewing the DHCP Client List

DHCP Client List					
Total Clients: 0					
ID	Client Name	MAC Address	Assigned IP Address	Lease Time	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-

Here you can view the DHCP client list.

Client Name Displays the host name of the DHCP client. It should be composed of digits, English letters, dashes and underscores only.

MAC Address Displays the MAC address of the client.

Assigned IP Address Displays the IP address assigned to the client.

Lease Time	Displays the remaining lease time of the assigned IP address. After the lease expires, the IP address will be re-assigned.
-------------------	--

4.4 Configuring the Address Reservation

Choose the menu **Network > LAN > Address Reservation** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 4-4 Configuring the Address Reservation

The screenshot shows the 'Address Reservation' configuration window. At the top, there is a search bar and action buttons for Export, Import, Add, and Delete. Below this is a table with the following columns: ID, MAC Address, Binding Type, Description, Status, and Operation. The table is currently empty. Below the table is a form with the following fields and options:

- MAC Address:** A text input field.
- Binding with:** Two checkboxes: IP Address and DHCP Option.
- Description:** A text input field with '(Optional)' next to it.
- Export to IP-MAC Binding:** A checkbox that is checked.
- IP-MAC Binding interface:** A dropdown menu with 'LAN' selected.
- Status:** A checkbox that is checked.

At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Configure the parameters for the address reservation entry, including MAC address, IP Address, and so on, then click **OK**.

MAC Address Enter the MAC address of the client.

Bridge With **IP Address:** (Optional) Enter the IP address to be reserved.
DHCP Option: (Optional) Enter the DHCP option to be bound.

Description (Optional) Enter a brief description for the entry. Up to 32 characters can be entered.

Export to IP-MAC Binding (Optional) Check the box to export this binding entry to IP-MAC Binding List on **Firewall > Anti ARP Spoofing > IP-MAC Binding** page.

Status Check the box to enable this entry.

4.5 Configuring the LAN DNS

LAN DNS allows the gateway to act as a DNS server, answering specific DNS queries from LAN hosts.

Choose the menu **Network > LAN > LAN DNS** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Note:

To use this function, the DNS server of the LAN host needs to be configured as the LAN IP of the gateway.

Figure 4-5 Configuring the LAN DNS

The screenshot shows the 'LAN DNS' configuration window. At the top right, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Profile, Status, Domain Name, Alias Domain Name, Type, and Operation. The table contains one row with dashes in all cells. Below the table is a configuration form with the following fields:

- Status: Enable
- Profile:
- Domain Name:
- Alias Domain Name: (Optional)
- Type:
- IP Address: (Use the Enter key, Space key, ";" or ":" to divide different IP Addresses.)
- IPv6 Address: (Use the Enter key, Space key, ";" or ":" to divide different IPv6 Addresses.)
- Apply To:

At the bottom left of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Configure the parameters for the LAN DNS entry, then click **OK**.

Status Whether to enable this entry.

Profile Specify the name of the profile.

Domain Name Enter the domain name.

Alias Domain Name If a server provides different services and has multiple domain names, you can enter them in the Alias Domain Name. Click + to add multiple aliases.

Type There are three options, IP, CNAME, and FORWARD.

IP: When the type IP is selected, the gateway will respond to the DNS query of the specified domain name, and use the configured IP address as the DNS response to directly reply to the LAN host. Select Type IP when there is a web server in the intranet and you want hosts in the LAN to access the web server through private IP addresses instead of public IP addresses.

CNAME: When the type CNAME is selected, the router will map the domain name to the configured CNAME domain name, send it to the DNS server for query, and then reply to the LAN host with the IP corresponding to the CNAME domain name.

Forward: When the type FORWARD is selected, the router will forward the DNS query of the LAN host to the specified DNS server, and reply the DNS response to the LAN host. The forwarding priority is higher than other public configurations, such as the DNS Server configured on the WAN port.

Apply To When the Type is IP or CNAME, you can choose to apply this rule to a selected LAN network or all networks.

5 DSL Setting (for DSL models)

In this module, you can configure and change DSL setting individually according to your actual network.

Choose the menu **Network > DSL Setting** to load the following page.

Figure 5-1 Configuring the DSL Setting

DSL Modulation Type	Choose a proper modulation type. If you are not sure, leave it as “Auto Sync-Up” (Default value).
Annex Type	Ask your ISP which Annex type your line is. If you are not sure, leave it as “Annex auto” (Default value).
Bit Swap	Select this checkbox to enable the Bit Swap feature. With bit-swapping, the gateway can swap bits around different channels, allowing it to robustly adapt to changing telephone line conditions.
SRA	Select this checkbox to enable the SRA (Seamless Rate Adaptation) feature that prevents ADSL data rate interference caused by the cross-talk between telephone lines.

6 Virtual WAN

Virtual WAN can connect to the internet. You can configure multiple virtual WANs mapped to one physical WAN based on your network needs. Configure the connection type and parameters for each virtual WAN according to your ISP's requirements.

To complete Virtual WAN configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Choose the menu **Network > Virtual WAN**, and click **Add** to add a virtual WAN.

Figure 6-1 Configuring the Virtual WAN

WAN Interface Name Select the physical WAN port to be mapped.

Status Check the box to enable the Virtual WAN.

Virtual WAN Name Enter a name to identify the Virtual WAN

Vlan Whether to enable Vlan.

Vlan ID When Vlan is enabled, enter a VLAN ID. Then the WAN port is automatically assigned to the VLAN. By default, the egress rule of the VLAN is TAG, so the packets are transmitted by the WAN port with VLAN tags. If you want the WAN port to transmit packets without VLAN tag, you need to configure its egress rule as UNTAG.

- 2) Click **OK**, and you will see the following page. You can see a new tab named your created WAN appears.

Virtual WAN test

	WAN Interface Name	Status	Virtual WAN Name	Vlan ID	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	-	-	-	-	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	DSL WAN	Enabled	test	22	

- 3) Click the new WAN to configure the virtual WAN connection. The configuration is the same as that for the corresponding physical WAN port.

Connection Configuration		Connection Status	
Virtual WAN Name:	test	Connection Status	Disconnected
WAN Interface Name:	DSL WAN(2)	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Location:	Argentina	Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0
ISP List:	Other	Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
DSL Modulation Type:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> VDSL <input type="radio"/> ADSL	Primary DNS	0.0.0.0
Connection Type:	Dynamic IP	Secondary DNS	0.0.0.0
Host Name:			
Upstream Bandwidth:	100000 Kbps (100-100000)		
Downstream Bandwidth:	350000 Kbps (100-350000)		
MTU:	1500 (576-1500)		
Primary DNS:			
Secondary DNS:			
MER:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable		
Vlan:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable		
Vlan ID:	22 (1-4094)		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Get IP using Unicast DHCP		
Priority (802.1q):	0		
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Connect"/> <input type="button" value="Disconnect"/>			

7 IPTV Configuration

Configure IPTV settings to enable Internet/IPTV/Phone service provided by your ISP (internet service provider).

To complete IPTV configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Enable IPTV globally.
- 2) Chose the Wan Port according to your ISP.
- 3) Select the appropriate Mode according to your ISP.
- 4) Select the Port Mode to determine which port is used to support IPTV service, IP-Phone service, or internet service.
- 5) Click **Save**.

7.1 Configuring the IPTV

Choose the menu **Network > IPTV > IPTV** to load the following page.

Figure 7-1 Configuring the IPTV

In the **Settings** section, enable IPTV and configure corresponding parameters, then click **Save**.

IPTV	Enable IPTV globally.
Wan Port	Select the Wan Port according to your ISP.
Mode	Select the appropriate Mode according to your ISP. Bridge: Select this mode if your ISP requires no other parameters. Custom: Select this mode if your ISP provides necessary parameters, and configure the parameters according to the requirements of your ISP.
Port Mode	Select the appropriate Port Mode of the LAN ports to determine which port is used to support Internet service, IPTV service, or IP-Phone service.

 **Note:**

To configure Internet VLAN ID, please go to [WAN Configuration](#) and configure on the corresponding WAN port.

8 MAC Configuration

Generally, the MAC address does not need to be changed. However, in the following situations, you may need to change the MAC address of the WAN port.

In the condition that your ISP has bound your account to the MAC address of the dial-up device, if you want to replace the dial-up device with this gateway, you can just set the MAC address of this gateway's WAN port the same as that of the previous dial-up device for a normal internet connection.

8.1 Configuring MAC Address

Choose the menu **Network > MAC > MAC** to load the following page.

Figure 8-1 Configuring MAC Address

The screenshot shows the MAC Configuration page with three main sections:

- MAC:** A table with columns for Interface Name, Current MAC Address, and MAC Clone.

Interface Name	Current MAC Address	MAC Clone
LTE	00-1D-0F-00-1E-F9	Restore Factory MAC Clone Current PC's MAC
WAN/LAN1	00-1D-0F-00-1E-F6	Restore Factory MAC Clone Current PC's MAC
DSL WAN	00-1D-0F-00-1E-F7	Restore Factory MAC Clone Current PC's MAC
LAN	00-1D-0F-00-1E-F4	
- MAC Virtual WAN:** A table with columns for Virtual WAN Name, Current MAC Address, and MAC Clone.

Virtual WAN Name	Current MAC Address	MAC Clone
-	-	-
- MAC 2.4GSSO:** A table with columns for Interface Name and Current MAC Address.

Interface Name	Current MAC Address
-	-

Configure the MAC address of the WAN port according to your need, then click **Save**.

Interface Name Displays the WAN port and LAN port.

Current MAC Address Configure the MAC address of the WAN port.

MAC Clone MAC Clone provides a shortcut to changing the MAC Address.

Restore Factory MAC: Click this button to restore the MAC address to the factory default value.

Clone Current PC's MAC: Click this button to clone the MAC address of the PC you are currently using to configure the gateway. It's only available for the WAN ports.

 **Note:**

When cloning current management host's MAC on the WAN port, the management PC should be connected to the LAN port.

If the connection type on the WAN port is PPPoE, L2TP or PPTP, changing the MAC address of the WAN port may cause the connection to be terminated or re-established.

9 Switch Configuration

The gateway provides some basic switch port management function, including **Statistics**, **Port Mirror**, **Rate Control**, **Port Config**, and **Port Status**.

9.1 Viewing the Statistics

Choose the menu **Network > Switch > Statistics** to load the following page.

Figure 9-1 Viewing the Statistics

Statistics List						
Packet Type	Port1	Port2	Port3	Port4	Port5	
Received	Unicast	0	0	0	0	62029
	Broadcast	0	0	0	0	162
	Pause	0	0	0	0	0
	Multicast	0	0	0	0	1042
	Total	0B	0B	0B	0B	18.2 MB
	Undersize	0	0	0	0	0
	Normal	129	0	0	0	148775
	Oversize	0	0	0	0	0
Transmitted	Unicast	0	0	0	0	84835
	Broadcast	19	0	0	0	708
	Pause	0	0	0	0	0
	Multicast	110	0	0	0	0
	Total	22187B	0B	0B	0B	55.7 MB

Refresh Clear

You can view the detailed traffic information of each port, which facilitates you to monitor the traffic and manage the network effectively.

Unicast	Displays the number of normal unicast packets received or transmitted on the port.
Broadcast	Displays the number of normal broadcast packets received or transmitted on the port.
Pause	Displays the number of flow control frames received or transmitted on the port.
Multicast	Displays the number of normal multicast packets received or transmitted on the port.
Total	Displays the total bytes of the received or transmitted packets (including error frames).
Undersize	Displays the number of received packets which have a length less than 64 bytes (including error frames).
Normal	Displays the number of received packets which have length between 64 bytes and the maximum frame length (including error frames).
Oversize	Displays the number of received packets that have a length greater than the maximum frame length (including error frames).

Refresh Click Refresh to view the latest traffic statistics of each port.

Clear Click Clear to clear all the traffic statistics.

 **Note:**

Error Frame: The frames that have a false checksum.

Maximum frame length: The maximum frame length supported by the gateway. For untagged frames, it's 1518 bytes long; for tagged packets, it's 1522 bytes long.

9.2 Configuring Port Mirror

Port Mirror function allows the gateway to forward packet copies of the monitored ports to a specific monitoring port. Then you can analyze the copied packets to monitor network traffic and troubleshoot network problems.

Choose the menu **Network > Switch > Mirror** to load the following page.

Figure 9-2 Configuring Port Mirror



Settings	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Port Mirror	
Mirror Mode:	Ingress and Egress
Monitor List	
Mirroring Port	Mirrored Port
<input type="radio"/> Port1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Port1
<input type="radio"/> Port2	<input type="checkbox"/> Port2
<input type="radio"/> Port3	<input type="checkbox"/> Port3
<input type="radio"/> Port4	<input type="checkbox"/> Port4
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Port5	<input type="checkbox"/> Port5
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

Follow these steps to configure Port Mirror:

- 1) In **Settings** section, enable Port Mirror function, and choose the mirror mode.

Enable Port Mirror

Check the box to enable Port Mirror function.

Mirror Mode

Choose the mirror mode which includes **Ingress**, **Egress** and **Ingress and Egress**.

Ingress: The packets received by the mirrored port will be copied to the mirroring port.

Egress: The packets sent by the mirrored port will be copied to the mirroring port.

Ingress and Egress: Both the incoming and outgoing packets through the mirrored port will be copied to the mirroring port.

- 2) In the **Monitor List** section, set the mirroring port and the mirrored port(s), then click **Save**.

Mirroring Port The packets through the mirrored port will be copied to this port. Usually, the mirroring port is connected to a data diagnose device, which is used to analyze the mirrored packets for monitoring and troubleshooting the network.

Mirrored Port The packets through this port will be copied to the mirroring port. Usually, the mirrored ports are the ports to be monitored.

9.3 Configuring Rate Control

Rate Control enables you to set limit to the traffic rate for the specific packets on each port to manage the traffic flow of your network.

Choose the menu **Network > Switch > Rate Control** to load the following page.

Figure 9-3 Configuring Rate Control

Port	Ingress Limit	Ingress Frame Type	Ingress Rate(Mbps)	Egress Limit	Egress Rate(Mbps)
Port1	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	All Frames	1000	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	1000
Port2	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	All Frames	1000	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	1000
Port3	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	All Frames	1000	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	1000
Port4	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	All Frames	1000	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	1000
Port5	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	All Frames	1000	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	1000

Choose the port and configure the ingress frames or egress frames limitation, then click **Save**.

Ingress Limit Check the box to enable the Ingress Limit feature.

Ingress Frame Type Specify the ingress frame type to be limited. It is All Frames by default.

All Frames: The ingress rate of all frames is limited.

Broadcast: The ingress rate of broadcast frames is limited.

Broadcast and Multicast: The ingress rate of broadcast and multicast frames is limited.

Ingress Rate (Mbps) Specify the limit rate for the ingress packets.

Egress Limit Check the box to enable Egress Limit feature.

Egress Rate (Mbps) Specify the limit rate for the egress packets.

9.4 Configuring Port Config

You can configure the flow control and negotiation mode for the port.

Choose the menu **Network > Switch > Port Config** to load the following page.

Figure 9-4 Configuring Flow Control and Negotiation

Port	Status	Flow Control	Negotiation Mode
Port1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Auto
Port2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Auto
Port3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Auto
Port4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Auto
Port5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Auto

Save

Configure the flow control and negotiation mode for a port.

Status

Check the box to enable Status of the port.

Flow Control

Check the box to enable the flow control function.

Flow Control is the process of managing the data transmission of the sender to avoid the receiver getting overloaded.

Negotiation Mode

Select the Negotiation Mode for the port. You can select Auto (Auto-negotiation), or manually select the speed and duplex mode.

9.5 Viewing Port Status

Choose the menu **Network > Switch > Port Status** to load the following page.

Figure 9-5 Viewing Port Status

Port	Status	Speed(Mbps)	Duplex Mode	Flow Control
Port1	Link Down	--	--	--
Port2	Link Down	--	--	--
Port3	Link Down	--	--	--
Port4	Link Down	--	--	--
Port5	Link Up	1000M	Full-duplex	Disabled

Refresh

Status

Displays the port status.

Link Down: The port is not connected.

Link Up: The port is working normally.

Speed (Mbps)

Displays the port speed.

Duplex Mode

Displays the duplex mode of the port.

Flow Control

Displays if the Flow Control is enabled.

10 VLAN Configuration

VLAN enables you to divide the LAN into multiple logical networks and control the traffic among them in a convenient and flexible way. The LAN can be logically segmented by departments, application, or types of users, without regard to geographic locations.

For VLAN configuration, you can:

- Create VLANs and add the desired ports to the VLANs.
- Configure the PVID of the ports.

10.1 Creating a VLAN

Choose the menu **Network > VLAN > VLAN** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 10-1 Creating a VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN List' configuration page. At the top right, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below is a table with columns: ID, VLAN ID, Name, Ports, Description, and Operation. The table contains three rows of existing VLANs. Below the table is a form for creating a new VLAN with fields for VLAN ID (1-4086), Name (1-32 characters), and Description (1-50 characters, optional). The 'Ports' section has five checkboxes (1-5) and dropdown menus for selecting 'TAG' or 'UNTAG'. 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom of the form.

ID	VLAN ID	Name	Ports	Description	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-
1	1	vlan1	2(UNTAG) 3(UNTAG) 4(UNTAG) 5(UNTAG)	LAN1	
2	4093	vlan4093	6(TAG)		
3	4094	vlan4094	1(UNTAG)		

Create a VLAN and add the port(s) to the VLAN, then click **OK**.

VLAN ID Enter a VLAN ID. The value ranges from 1 to 4094.

Name Specify the name of the VLAN for easy identification.

Ports Check the box to add the desired port to the VLAN and specify the port type in the specified VLAN. The port can be divided into two types: TAG or UNTAG.

TAG: The egress rule of the packets transmitted by the port is tagged.

UNTAG: The egress rule of the packets transmitted by the port is untagged. If the device connected to the port is an end device, like a PC or a server, the port type should be UNTAG, because end devices don't recognize tagged packets.

Description (Optional) Enter a brief description for easy management and searching.

VLAN List							+ Add - Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	VLAN ID	Name	Ports	Description	Operation	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	1	vlan1	2(UNTAG) 3(UNTAG) 4(UNTAG) 5(UNTAG)	LAN1		
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	4093	vlan4093	6(TAG)			
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	4094	vlan4094	1(UNTAG)			

In the VLAN list you can view all the VLANs existing in the gateway.

VLAN ID Displays the VLAN ID.

Name Displays the VLAN name.

Ports Displays the ports which belongs to the corresponding VLAN.

Description Displays the description of the VLAN.

Note:

The VLAN list contains all the VLANs existing in the gateway. Some of them are manually created by the user, and can be edited or deleted. Some are automatically created and referenced by the gateway for some special scenarios like management VLAN, and you cannot edit or delete these VLANs.

10.2 Configuring the PVID of a Port

PVID indicates the default VLAN for the corresponding port. Untagged packets which are received by the port are tagged with the PVID and then transmitted within the corresponding VLAN.

For example, if Port 2 is in both VLAN 10 and VLAN 20, and the PVID of the port is 10, when Port 2 receives an untagged packet from a PC, the packet is transmitted within VLAN 10, but cannot reach VLAN 20 directly.

To Configure the PVID of the port, choose the menu **Network > VLAN > Ports** to load the following page.

Figure 10-2 Configuring the PVID

Port	PVID	VLAN
Port1	4094	4094(UNTAG)
Port2	1	1(UNTAG)
Port3	1	1(UNTAG)
Port4	1	1(UNTAG)
Port5	1	1(UNTAG)

Configure the PVID of the port, then click **Save**.

Port	Displays the port.
PVID	Specify the PVID for the port. PVID indicates the default VLAN for the corresponding port.
VLAN	Displays the VLAN(s) the port belongs to.

11 IPv6 Configuration

IPv6 is the next-generation network protocol following IPv4. You can configure IPv6 network for the gateway if your ISP supports IPv6. IPv6 network won't cause conflict with your current IPv4 network.

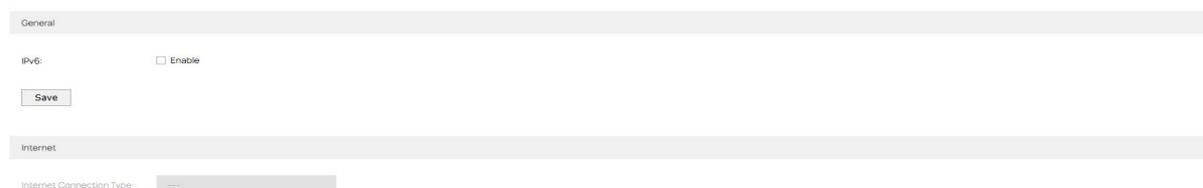
To configure the IPv6 network, follow the guidelines:

- Configure IPv6 for the LANs.
- Configure IPv6 for the WAN/DSL WAN port(s). You can configure IPv6 for multiple WANs, and each WAN port has its own Internet Connection Type and parameters.

11.1 Configure IPv6 for WAN / DSL WAN port(s)

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

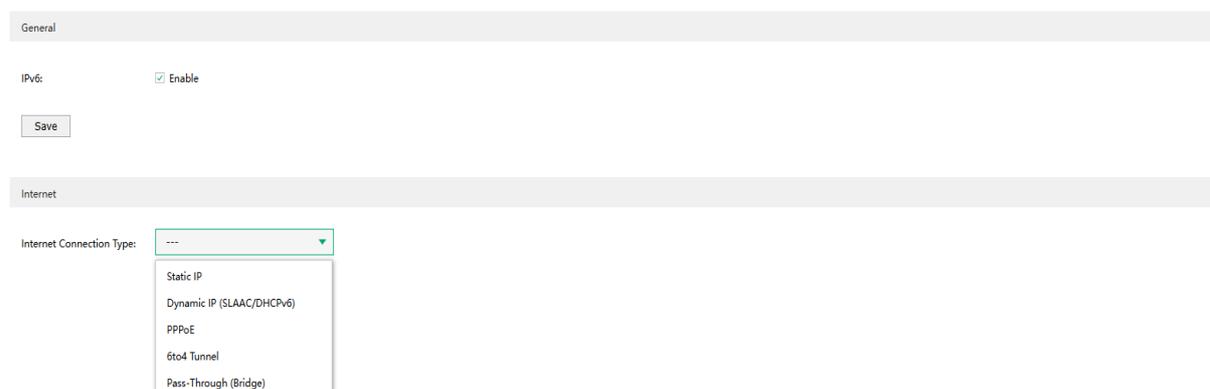
Figure 11-1 Enable IPv6



The screenshot shows the configuration page for IPv6. In the **General** section, there is a checkbox labeled "IPv6:" which is currently unchecked. Below it is a "Save" button. In the **Internet** section, there is a dropdown menu for "Internet Connection Type:" which is currently set to "...".

In the **General** section, enable IPv6 and click **Save**.

Figure 11-2 Select Internet Connection Type



The screenshot shows the configuration page for IPv6. In the **General** section, the "IPv6:" checkbox is now checked. Below it is a "Save" button. In the **Internet** section, the "Internet Connection Type:" dropdown menu is open, showing the following options: Static IP, Dynamic IP (SLAAC/DHCPv6), PPPoE, 6to4 Tunnel, and Pass-Through (Bridge).

In the **Internet** section, select the proper Internet Connection Type and configure the parameters according to the requirements of your ISP. Then click **Save**.

Internet Connection Type

Choose the proper Internet Connection Type according to the requirements of your ISP.

11.2 Configuring the WAN Connection

The gateway supports five connection types: **Static IP**, **Dynamic IP (SLAAC/DHCPv6)**, **PPPoE**, **6to4 Tunnel**, **Pass-Through (Bridge)**, you can choose one according to the service provided by your ISP.

Static IP: If your ISP provides you with a fixed IP address and the corresponding parameters, choose Static IP.

Dynamic IP (SLAAC/DHCPv6): If your ISP automatically assigns the IP address and the corresponding parameters, choose Dynamic IP.

PPPoE: If your ISP provides you with a PPPoE account, choose PPPoE.

6to4 Tunnel: Select this type if your ISP uses 6to4 deployment for assigning address.

Pass-Through (Bridge): Select this type if your ISP uses Pass-Through (Bridge) network deployment.

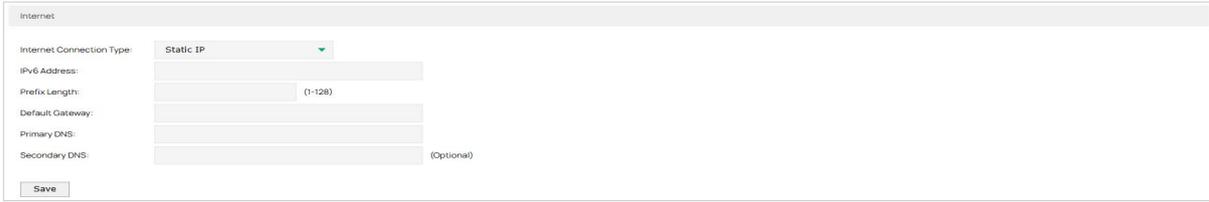
Note:

If Internet Connection Type of WAN is selected as Pass-Through (Bridge), the IPv6 parameters of the LAN port and the other WAN ports cannot be configured.

■ Configuring the Static IP

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

Figure 11-3 Configuring the Static IP



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Internet". The "Internet Connection Type" is set to "Static IP". Below this, there are input fields for "IPv6 Address", "Prefix Length" (with a hint "(1-128)"), "Default Gateway", "Primary DNS", and "Secondary DNS" (marked as "(Optional)"). A "Save" button is located at the bottom left of the form.

In **Internet** section, select the connection type as Static IP. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

IPv6 Address/
Prefix Length/
Default Gateway/
Primary DNS/
Secondary DNS

Enter these parameters as provided by the ISP.

■ Configuring the Dynamic IP (SLAAC/DHCPv6)

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

Figure 11-4 Configuring the Dynamic IP (SLAAC/DHCPv6)

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for an Internet connection. The 'Internet Connection Type' is set to 'Dynamic IP (SLAAC/DHCPv6)'. The IPv6 Address, Primary DNS, and Secondary DNS fields are empty. The DUID field contains '123'. The Link-local Address field is empty. There are 'Renew' and 'Release' buttons. An 'Advanced' checkbox is unchecked. A 'Save' button is at the bottom.

In **Internet** section, select the connection type as Dynamic IP (SLAAC/DHCPv6). Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

IPv6 Address/ Primary DNS/ Secondary DNS	These parameters are automatically assigned by your ISP.
Renew	Click this button to get new IPv6 parameters assigned by your ISP.
Release	Click this button to release all IPv6 addresses assigned by your ISP.
Get IPv6 Address	Select the proper method whereby your ISP assigns IPv6 address to your gateway.
Auto	Select Auto to get an IPv6 address automatically.
DHCPv6	Your ISP assigns an IPv6 address and other parameters including the DNS server address to your gateway using DHCPv6.
SLAAC+Stateless DHCP	Your ISP assigns the IPv6 address prefix to your gateway and your gateway automatically generates its own IPv6 address. Also, your ISP assigns other parameters including the DNS server address to your gateway using DHCPv6.
Prefix Delegation	Select Enable to get an address prefix for your LAN port from your ISP, or Disable to designate an address prefix for your LAN port manually. Clients in LAN will get an IPv6 address with this prefix.
Prefix Delegation Size	With Prefix Delegation enabled, enter the Prefix Delegation Size to determine the length of the address prefix. You can get this value from your ISP.
DNS Address	Select whether to get the DNS address dynamically from your ISP or designate the DNS address manually.
Get dynamically from ISP	Your ISP assigns an DNS address to your gateway dynamically.
Use the following DNS Addresses	You should manually enter the DNS address provided by your ISP.
Primary DNS/ Secondary DNS	Enter the DNS address manually or display the DNS address which is assigned by your ISP.

■ Configuring the PPPoE

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

Figure 11-5 Configuring the PPPoE

The screenshot shows the 'Internet' configuration page. The 'Internet Connection Type' is set to 'PPPoE'. Below this, there are input fields for 'Username:', 'Password:', 'IPv6 Address:', 'DUID:', and 'Link-local Address:'. There is an 'Advanced' toggle button which is currently turned off. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Connect', 'Disconnect', and 'Save'.

In **Internet** section, select the connection type as PPPoE. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

PPPoE same session with IPv4 connection	If this option is enabled, IPv6 uses the same PPPoE session as IPv4.
Username/Password:	Enter these parameters as provided by your ISP.
IPv6 Address	This address will be automatically assigned by your ISP after you enter the username and password and click Connect .
Connect	Click this button to connect to the internet.
Disconnect	Click this button to disconnect from the internet.
Get IPv6 Address	Select the proper method whereby your ISP assigns IPv6 address to your gateway.
Auto	Select Auto to get an IPv6 address automatically.
DHCPv6	Your ISP assigns an IPv6 address and other parameters including the DNS server address to your gateway using DHCPv6.
SLAAC+Stateless DHCP	Your ISP assigns the IPv6 address prefix to your gateway and your gateway automatically generates its own IPv6 address. Also, your ISP assigns other parameters including the DNS server address to your gateway using DHCPv6.
Specified by ISP	You should manually enter the IPv6 address provided by your ISP.
Prefix Delegation	Select Enable to get an address prefix for your LAN port from your ISP, or Disable to designate an address prefix for your LAN port manually. Clients in LAN will get an IPv6 address with this prefix.
Prefix Delegation Size	With Prefix Delegation enabled, enter the Prefix Delegation Size to determine the length of the address prefix. You can get this value from your ISP.
DNS Address	Select whether to get the DNS address dynamically from your ISP or designate the DNS address manually.

Get dynamically from ISP	Your ISP assigns an DNS address and to your gateway dynamically.
Use the following DNS Addresses	You should manually enter the DNS address provided by your ISP.
Primary DNS/ Secondary DNS	Enter the DNS address manually or display the DNS address which is assigned by your ISP.
Connect	Click this button to connect to the internet.
Disconnect	Click this button to disconnect from the internet.

■ Configuring the 6to4 Tunnel

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

Figure 11-6 Configuring the 6to4 Tunnel

The screenshot shows the 'Internet' configuration page. The 'Internet Connection Type' dropdown is set to '6to4 Tunnel'. Below it are input fields for 'IPv4 Address:', 'IPv4 Subnet Mask:', 'IPv4 Default Gateway:', and 'Tunnel Address:'. There is an 'Advanced' toggle button. At the bottom, there are 'Connect', 'Disconnect', and 'Save' buttons.

In **Internet** section, select the connection type as 6to4 Tunnel. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

IPv4 Address/ IPv4 Subnet Mask/ IPv4 Default Gateway/ Tunnel Address	IPv4 Address/IPv4 Subnet Mask/IPv4 Default Gateway/Tunnel Address: These parameters will be dynamically generated by the IPv4 information of WAN port after you click Connect.
Use the following DNS Server	Click the box to manually enter the primary DNS and/or secondary DNS as provided by your ISP.
Connect	Click this button to connect to the internet.
Disconnect	Click this button to disconnect from the internet.

■ Configuring the Pass-Through (Bridge)

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > WAN/LAN1** to load the following page.

Figure 11-7 Configuring the Pass-Through (Bridge)

The screenshot shows the 'Internet' configuration page. The 'Internet Connection Type' dropdown is set to 'Pass-Through (Bridge)'. At the bottom, there is a 'Save' button.

In **Internet** section, select the connection type as Pass-Through (Bridge). No configuration is required for this type of connection.

11.3 Configuring IPv6 for the LAN Port

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > LAN**, and click the **Edit** icon to load the following page.

Figure 11-8 Select Assigned Type

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name(Vlan)	Assigned Type	Address	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	LAN(1)	None	fe80::21d:fff:fe00:1ef4/64	

LAN(VLAN): 1
Assigned Type: None

OK Cancel

In the **General** section, select the proper Assigned Type, which is determined by the compatibility of clients in your local network, and configure the parameters according to the requirements of your ISP. Then click **OK**.

Assigned Type

Determines the method whereby the gateway assigns IPv6 addresses to the clients in your local network. Some clients may support only a few of these assigned types, so you should choose it according to the compatibility of clients in your local network.

Note:

- If Internet Connection Type of WAN / SFP WAN is selected as Pass-Through (Bridge), the IPv6 parameters of the LAN port and the other WAN ports cannot be configured.
- If Prefix Delegation of WAN / SFP WAN is enabled, the Address Prefix of LAN is automatically assigned by your ISP and you cannot designate an address prefix manually.

Configuring the DHCPv6

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > LAN**, and click the **Edit** icon to load the following page.

Figure 11-9 Configuring the DHCPv6

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name(Vlan)	Assigned Type	Address	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	LAN(1)	None	fe80::21d:fff:fe00:1ef4/64	

LAN(VLAN): 1
Assigned Type: DHCPv6

IPv6 Address: /

DHCP Range: -

Lease Time: minutes. (The default is 1440, do not change unless necessary.)

DNS Address: Auto Manual DNS

Address:

RA Priority: Low Medium High

RA Valid Lifetime: 86400 (1-172799999)

RA Preferred Lifetime: 14400 (1-172799999)

OK Cancel

In **Assigned Type** section, select the connection type as DHCPv6. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **OK**.

IPv6 Address	Enter the IPv6 address and prefix length (subnet mask).
DHCP Range	Enter the starting and ending IPv6 address to define a range for the DHCPv6 server to assign dynamic IPv6 addresses.
Lease Time	The duration time in minutes when the assigned IPv6 address remains valid. Either keep the default 1440 minutes or change it if required.
DNS Address	Select a method to configure the DNS server for the LAN, with Auto selected, the DNS server addresses are automatically obtained. With Manual DNS selected, manually enter the primary and secondary DNS server addresses provided by your ISP.
Address	Displays the IPv6 address of the LAN port.
RA Priority	Specify the router priority to help a host choose its default gateway. If a host receives RA messages from multiple routers, it will select the router with the highest RA priority as the default gateway. In the case of routers with the same priority, it will select the router whose RA message is received first as the default gateway.
RA Valid Lifetime	Specify the validity lifetime of the prefix. The addresses automatically generated with the prefix can be used normally during the valid lifetime, and they will become invalid and be deleted after the valid lifetime expires.
RA Preferred Lifetime	Specify the preferred lifetime for stateless auto-configuration of addresses with the prefix. After the preferred lifetime expires, the addresses automatically configured by the hosts with this prefix will be abolished. A host cannot use an abolished address to establish a new connection, but it can still receive packets whose destination address is an abolished address. The RA Preferred Lifetime must be less than or equal to the RA Valid Lifetime.

■ Configuring the SLAAC+Stateless DHCP

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > LAN**, and click the **Edit** icon to load the following page.

Figure 11-10 Configuring the SLAAC+Stateless DHCP

General

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name (Vlan)	Assigned Type	Address	Operation
-	1	LAN(1)	None	fe80::21d:fff:fe00:1ef4/64	

LAN(VLAN): 1

Assigned Type: SLAAC+Stateless DHCP

Prefix: Manual Prefix Get from Prefix Delegation

Address Prefix: /64

DNS Address: Auto Manual DNS

Address:

RA Priority: Low Medium High

RA Valid Lifetime: 86400 (1-172799999)

RA Preferred Lifetime: 14400 (1-172799999)

In **Assigned Type** section, select the connection type as SLAAC+Stateless DHCP. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **OK**.

Prefix	Configure the IPv6 address prefix for each client in the local network. With Manual Prefix selected, enter the prefix in the Address Prefix field. With Get from Prefix Delegation selected, select the IPv6 Prefix Delegation WAN port, and enter the IPv6 Prefix ID to get a prefix delegation from the ISP.
---------------	--

IPv6 Prefix Delegation WAN	Enter the IPv6 Prefix Delegation WAN port and the IPv6 Prefix ID to get a prefix delegation from the ISP.
IPv6 Prefix ID	With Get from Prefix Delegation selected, enter the Prefix ID, which will be added to the prefix to obtain a /64 subnet. The range of IPv6 Prefix ID is determined by Prefix Delegation Size and Prefix Length.
DNS Address	Select a method to configure the DNS server for the LAN. With Auto selected, the DNS server addresses are automatically obtained. With Manual DNS selected, manually enter the primary and secondary DNS server addresses provided by your ISP.
Address	Displays the IPv6 address automatically generated by Prefix.
RA Priority	Specify the router priority to help a host choose its default gateway. If a host receives RA messages from multiple routers, it will select the router with the highest RA priority as the default gateway. In the case of routers with the same priority, it will select the router whose RA message is received first as the default gateway.
RA Valid Lifetime	Specify the validity lifetime of the prefix. The addresses automatically generated with the prefix can be used normally during the valid lifetime, and they will become invalid and be deleted after the valid lifetime expires.
RA Preferred Lifetime	Specify the preferred lifetime for stateless auto-configuration of addresses with the prefix. After the preferred lifetime expires, the addresses automatically configured by the hosts with this prefix will be abolished. A host cannot use an abolished address to establish a new connection, but it can still receive packets whose destination address is an abolished address. The RA Preferred Lifetime must be less than or equal to the RA Valid Lifetime.

■ Configuring the SLAAC+RDNSS

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > LAN**, and click the **Edit** icon to load the following page.

Figure 11-11 Configuring the SLAAC+RDNSS

The screenshot shows the 'General' configuration page for an IPv6 LAN. At the top, there is a table with the following data:

ID	Name(Vlan)	Assigned Type	Address	Operation
1	LAN(1)	None	fe80::21d:ff:fe00:1ef6/64	

Below the table, the configuration options for LAN(VLAN) 1 are shown:

- Assigned Type:** SLAAC+RDNSS (selected)
- Prefix:** Manual Prefix (selected), Get from Prefix Delegation (unselected)
- Address Prefix:** /64
- DNS Address:** Auto (selected), Manual DNS (unselected)
- RA Priority:** Low (unselected), Medium (selected), High (unselected)
- RA Valid Lifetime:** 86400 (range: 1-172799999)
- RA Preferred Lifetime:** 14400 (range: 1-172799999)

At the bottom, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

In **Assigned Type** section, select the connection type as SLAAC+RDNSS. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **OK**.

Prefix	Configure the IPv6 address prefix for each client in the local network. With Manual Prefix selected, enter the prefix in the Address Prefix field. With Get from Prefix Delegation selected, select the IPv6 Prefix Delegation WAN port, and enter the IPv6 Prefix ID to get a prefix delegation from the ISP.
---------------	--

IPv6 Prefix Delegation WAN	Enter the IPv6 Prefix Delegation WAN port and the IPv6 Prefix ID to get a prefix delegation from the ISP.
IPv6 Prefix ID	With Get from Prefix Delegation selected, enter the Prefix ID, which will be added to the prefix to obtain a /64 subnet. The range of IPv6 Prefix ID is determined by Prefix Delegation Size and Prefix Length.
DNS Address	Select a method to configure the DNS server for the LAN. With Auto selected, the DNS server addresses are automatically obtained. With Manual DNS selected, manually enter the primary and secondary DNS server addresses provided by your ISP.
Address	Displays the IPv6 address automatically generated by Prefix.
RA Priority	Specify the router priority to help a host choose its default gateway. If a host receives RA messages from multiple routers, it will select the router with the highest RA priority as the default gateway. In the case of routers with the same priority, it will select the router whose RA message is received first as the default gateway.
RA Valid Lifetime	Specify the validity lifetime of the prefix. The addresses automatically generated with the prefix can be used normally during the valid lifetime, and they will become invalid and be deleted after the valid lifetime expires.
RA Preferred Lifetime	Specify the preferred lifetime for stateless auto-configuration of addresses with the prefix. After the preferred lifetime expires, the addresses automatically configured by the hosts with this prefix will be abolished. A host cannot use an abolished address to establish a new connection, but it can still receive packets whose destination address is an abolished address. The RA Preferred Lifetime must be less than or equal to the RA Valid Lifetime.

■ Configuring the pass-through

Choose the menu **Network > IPv6 > LAN**, and click the **Edit** icon to load the following page.

Figure 11-12 Configuring the pass-through

ID	Name(Vlan)	Assigned Type	Address	Operation
1	LAN(1)	None	fe80::21d:fff:fe00:1e14/64	

LAN(VLAN): 1

Assigned Type: passthrough

IPv6 Passthrough WAN:

OK Cancel

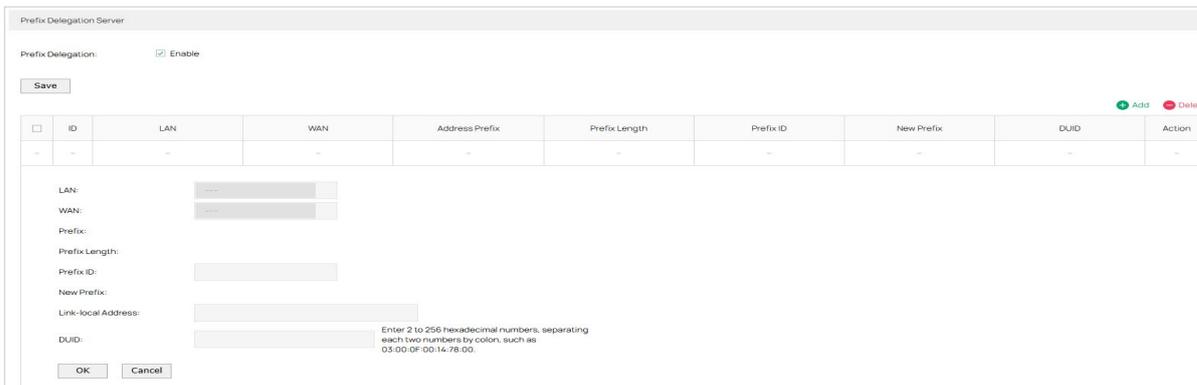
In **Assigned Type** section, select the connection type as pass-through. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **OK**.

IPv6 Passthrough WAN	Select the WAN port using Pass-Through (Bridge) for the IPv6 connection.
-----------------------------	--

 **Note:**

- If Internet Connection Type of WAN / SFP WAN is selected as Pass-Through (Bridge), the IPv6 parameters of the LAN port and the other WAN ports cannot be configured.
- If Prefix Delegation of WAN / SFP WAN is enabled, the Address Prefix of LAN is automatically assigned by your ISP and you cannot designate an address prefix manually.

3) In the **Prefix Delegation Server** section, check the box to enable **Prefix Delegation**, click **Add** to add a Prefix Delegation Server. Then click **OK**.



LAN Specify the LAN port to which the requesting gateway will connect.

WAN Select the WAN port to obtain the delegated prefix.

Prefix Displays the prefix delegated by the selected WAN port. (Note: You need to enable Prefix Delegation for the corresponding WAN port. Follow the steps: Go to Network > IPV6 > WAN, set Internet Connection Type to Dynamic IP, and enable Prefix Delegation in Advanced.)

Prefix Length Displays the length of the prefix to be applied. (Note: To set the prefix length, go to Network > IPV6 > WAN, set Internet Connection Type to Dynamic IP, and set the Prefix Delegation Size in Advanced.)

Prefix ID Specify the value of the remaining bits if the configured Prefix Length is greater than the Prefix Length allocated by the original WAN port.

New Prefix Displays the prefix to be applied.

Link-local Address Specify the link-local IPv6 address of the device to apply the prefix.

DUID The ID of the device to be apply the prefix.

Part 5

Configuring VoIP (for DSL models)

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. Telephone Number
3. Telephony Devices
4. Telephone Book
5. Call Log
6. Call Forwarding
7. Voice Mail
8. DND & Call Blocking

1 Overview

The VoIP module provides telephony functions, including Telephone Book, Call Forwarding, Voice Mail and more.

1.1 Supported Features

Telephone Number

Telephone Numbers allows you to add telephone accounts and to modify their settings.

Telephony Devices

Telephony Devices allows you to configure phone settings for all registered devices.

Telephone Book

Telephone Book and Emergency Number. Telephone Book allows you to save contact details and assign a speed dial number to the contact. Emergency Number helps to make a call for help when emergency occurs.

Call Log

Call Log records the details of incoming calls and outgoing calls.

Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding allows you to redirect incoming calls to a designated phone number.

Voice Mail

Voice Mail allows callers to leave voice messages on an external USB storage device with the appropriate configuration files when calls are not answered.

DND & Call Blocking

DND (Do Not Disturb) allows you to temporarily block all incoming calls based on your specific schedule. The blocked calls will be recorded in the Call Log table. Call Blocking allows you to block unwanted calls and to prevent the router from making certain call types.

2 Telephone Number

Telephone Numbers allows you to add telephone accounts and to modify their settings.

To complete Telephone Number configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Choose the menu **VoIP > Telephone Number**, and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Configuring the Telephone Number

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Telephone Numbers". At the top right, there are three buttons: "Refresh" (green circle with refresh icon), "Add" (green plus icon), and "Delete" (red minus icon). Below this is a table with the following columns: "Status", "Telephone Number", "Provider", and "Operation". The table is currently empty. Below the table is a form for adding a new telephone number. The form has the following fields: "Telephony Provider" (a dropdown menu currently showing "Other"), "Phone Number" (a text input field), "Registrar Address" (a text input field with a note "(IP Address/Domain Name)"), "Authentication ID" (a text input field with a note "(Optional)"), and "Password" (a text input field with a note "(Optional)" and a small eye icon). There is also a radio button labeled "Advanced" which is currently unselected. At the bottom of the form are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

- 2) Enter the necessary information as required, and click **OK** to make the settings effective. Different telephony providers have different parameters. Contact your provider if you don't know what to enter.

Telephony Provider

Choose your Telephony Provider. If your telephony provider is not in the list, select Other and fill in the required parameters.

Phone Number

The number you use to make and receive calls.

Registrar Address

Usually the domain name of the VoIP registration server, if not, it is the IP address.

Authentication ID and Password

Some service providers do not require this information, but fill it in if you are provided.

If the VoIP provider also provides a SIP Proxy address and an Outbound Proxy address, click the Advanced option and fill in the content of the Advanced option. If the VoIP provider does not provide this information, click OK directly.

Password

Some service providers do not require this information, but fill it in if you are provided.

Advanced

Click to show the advanced settings:

Registrar Port: Typically 5060, unless the VoIP provider specifies a different port.

SIP Proxy: Usually the domain name of the SIP Proxy Server, if not, it is the IP address.

SIP Proxy Port: Typically 5060, unless the VoIP provider specifies a different port.

Outbound Proxy: Usually the domain name of the Outbound Proxy Server, if not, it is the IP address.

Outbound Proxy Port: Typically 5060, unless the VoIP provider specifies a different port.

Register via Outbound Proxy: It is usually enabled by default.

3) Configure the **Advanced Settings** as needed.

Advanced Settings	
Bound Interface:	LAN
Locale Selection:	GB
No Answer Time:	20 (5-60 seconds)
T.38 Support:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

Bound Interface

Select the interface of the SIP server to send and receive VoIP traffic. Select LAN for over-the-local-network connection.

Locale Selection

Select your location. The router is embedded with the default location-based parameters such as ring tones. The default is United Kingdom.

No Answer Time

Enter the duration for the incoming calls to go to voicemail or the destination telephone number when there is no response.

T.38 Support

Select the checkbox to enable T.38 support that allows fax documents to be transferred in real-time between two standard Group 3 facsimile terminals over the Internet or other networks using IP protocols. This function is only effective between two T.38-enabled terminals.

3 Telephony Devices

Telephony Devices allows you to configure phone settings for all registered devices.

To complete Telephony Devices configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Choose the menu **VoIP > Telephony Devices** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Configuring the Telephony Devices

Telephony Devices Refresh				
Device Name	Number for Incoming Calls	Internal Number	Number for Outgoing Calls	Operation
Phone 2	--	**	auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Phone 1	--	**	auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Voice Mail	--	*20	--	

Number for Incoming Calls

Displays the assigned number of your telephony device to receive incoming calls through your router.

Internal Number

Displays the number used to make calls between telephony devices that are connected to the router. This number is fixed and cannot be changed.

Number for Outgoing Calls

Displays the number used by your telephony devices to make outgoing calls through your router. The default is Auto, which means the router will select an available number to be the outgoing number.

- 2) Configure the **Edit** button to modify the settings, then click **OK** to apply the settings.

Telephony Devices Refresh				
Device Name	Number for Incoming Calls	Internal Number	Number for Outgoing Calls	Operation
Phone 2	--	**	auto	
<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Device Name: <input type="text" value="Phone 2"/></p> <p>Number for Outgoing Calls: <input type="text" value="auto"/></p> <p>Number for Incoming Calls: <input type="text" value="--"/></p> <p>VAD Support: <input type="checkbox"/> Enable</p> <p>Speaker Gain: <input type="range" value="50"/></p> <p>Mic Gain: <input type="range" value="50"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> </div>				
Phone 1	--	**	auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Voice Mail	--	*20	--	

VAD Support

Select the VAD Support checkbox to enable this function. VAD (Voice Activity Detection) saves bandwidth consumption by avoiding transmission of silence packets. It also ensures that the bandwidth is reserved only when voice activity is activated. It is enabled by default.

Speaker Gain

Adjust the Speaker Gain slider to control the speaker sound.

Mic Gain

Adjust the Mic Gain slider to control the sound of the microphone.

4 Telephone Book

There are two functions in this module, Telephone Book and Emergency Number. Telephone Book allows you to save contact details and assign a speed dial number to the contact. Emergency Number helps to make a call for help when emergency occurs.

4.1 Telephone Book

Follow the steps below to have a telephone book on the gateway.

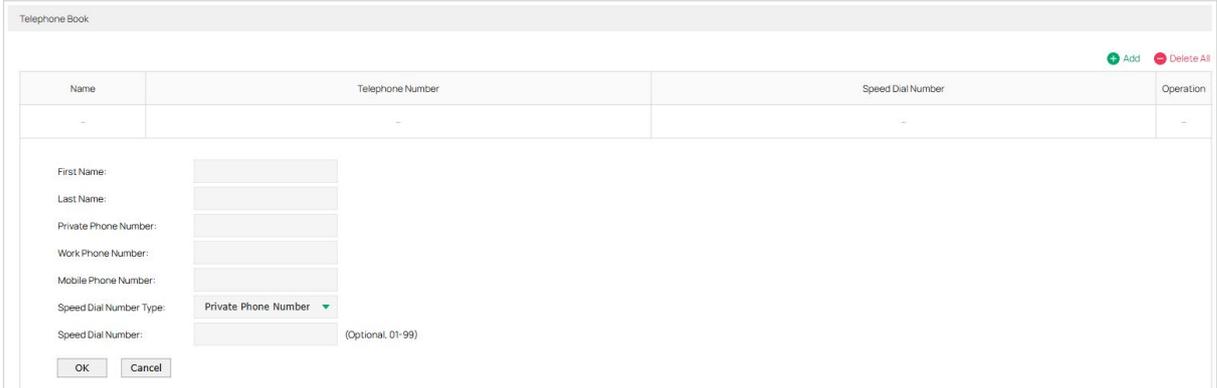
- 1) Choose the menu **VoIP > Telephone Book** to load the following page.

Figure 4-1 Configuring the Telephone Book



Name	Telephone Number	Speed Dial Number	Operation
-	-	-	-

- 2) Click **Add** to enter a new contact's information.



- 3) You can set speed dial number for certain numbers. Speed dial function allows you to reach the desired party by dialing the reduced number of keys rather than a long phone number.
- 4) Click **OK** to make the setting effective.

4.2 Emergency Number Settings

Follow the steps below to configure emergency numbers.

- 1) Choose the menu **VoIP > Telephone Book**, and locate the **Emergency Number Settings** section.

The screenshot shows a settings window titled "Emergency Number Settings". It contains the following elements:

- Emergency Number:** A toggle switch that is currently turned on (green).
- No Operation Time:** A drop-down menu currently set to "3 seconds".
- Emergency Number 1:** An empty text input field with "(Optional)" to its right.
- Emergency Number 2:** An empty text input field with "(Optional)" to its right.
- Emergency Number 3:** An empty text input field with "(Optional)" to its right.
- Emergency Number 4:** An empty text input field with "(Optional)" to its right.
- Emergency Number 5:** An empty text input field with "(Optional)" to its right.
- Save:** A button located at the bottom left of the settings area.

- 2) Toggle on to enable **Emergency Number**.
- 3) Set the **No Operation Time**. Select a time period from the drop-down list to specify the time period before the phone makes the call automatically.
- 4) Enter up to 5 telephone numbers for emergency calls. The phone will call these numbers
- 5) Click **Save** to make the setting effective.

5 Call Log

Call Log records the details of incoming calls and outgoing calls through your gateway. Choose the menu **VoIP > Call Log**, and toggle on to enable **Call Log**.



Call Log

Call Log:

[Refresh](#) [Delete All](#)

Date/Time	Type	Duration (hh:mm:ss)	Number/Contacts	Device Number	Telephony Device	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-

6 Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding allows you to redirect incoming calls to a designated phone number.

Follow the steps below to configure Call Forwarding.

1) Choose the menu **VoIP > Call Forwarding**, click **Add** to load the following page.

The screenshot shows the 'Call Forwarding' configuration interface. At the top, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete All' buttons. Below is a table with the following structure:

Calls	Forward via	Destination Number	Forward Type	Enable	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-

Below the table, the configuration options are:

- Select the incoming calls to be forwarded:** A dropdown menu is set to 'All Incoming Calls'.
- Set Forwarding Rules:**
 - Destination Telephone Number:** An empty text input field.
 - Call Forward Condition:** A dropdown menu is set to 'Unconditional'.

At the bottom, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

2) Select the forwarding type:

All Incoming Calls: If this option is selected, all incoming calls will be forwarded.

Calls to the Telephone Number: If this option is selected, select a telephone number from the list. Any incoming calls to this number will be forwarded.

Calls to the Phone: If this option is selected, select a telephony device from the list. Any incoming calls to this device will be forwarded.

Calls from a Person in the Telephone Book: If this option is selected, select a contact from the list. Any incoming calls from this contact will be forwarded.

Calls from the Telephone Number: If this option is selected, enter a specific telephone number. Any incoming calls from this number will be forwarded.

3) Select the Call Forward Condition

Unconditional: All incoming calls will be redirected to the designated telephone number whether the receiver is busy or not.

No Answer: Incoming calls that are not answered for the specified time period will be redirected to the designated telephone number.

4) Click **OK** to make the setting effective.

7 Voice Mail

Voice Mail allows callers to leave voice messages on an external USB storage device with the appropriate configuration files when calls are not answered.

Follow the steps below to configure Voice Mail.

- 1) Plug the USB storage device into the USB port on the gateway.
- 2) Choose the menu **VoIP > Voice Mail** to load the following page.

Voice Mail Settings

Voice Mail:

No Answer Time: (5-60 seconds)

Remote Access to Voice Mail:

Remote Access PIN: (4-8 digits)

Note: To access your voice mail remotely, dial the number for incoming calls. When your personal greeting starts, press *. Enter your Remote Access PIN when prompted.

Greeting for Voice Mail:

Note: Pick up the analog phone and dial *30 to record a personalized greeting for your voice mail. Your customized greetings will be lost after you replace the USB drive. You can copy the greetings to the new USB drive or record a new greeting.

Voice Mail Duration: (20-120 seconds)

Voice Mailbox Capacity:

Note: When the value is set to 0, no voice messages will be saved to USB Storage device.

Save

Voice Mail List

Refresh Delete All

Status	Date/Time	Incoming Number	Telephone Number	Duration (hh:mm:ss)	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-

Note: Pick up the analog phone and dial *20 to listen to your voice messages.

- 3) Toggle on to enable Voice Mail.
- 4) Enter the duration in the **No Answer Time** field for the incoming calls to go to voicemail or the destination telephone number when there is no response.
- 5) Select the **Greeting for Voice mail** to use either the default or your custom greeting for the voice mail. You can click the Play icon to play the greeting.
- 6) Enter a value in seconds in the **Voice Mail Duration** field to limit the length of each voice mail.
- 7) Enter an integer in the **Voice Mailbox Capacity** field to limit the storage space for voice messages.
- 8) (Optional) If you want to listen to your voice mails remotely, toggle On to enable **Remote Access to Voice Mail** and create a PIN in the **Remote Access PIN** field. To access your voice mail remotely, dial the number for incoming calls. When your personal greeting starts, press *. Enter your Remote Access PIN when prompted.
- 9) Click **Save** to apply the settings.

In the Voice Mail List, you can check the details of all recorded voice mails.

8 DND & Call Blocking

DND (Do Not Disturb) allows you to temporarily block all incoming calls based on your specific schedule. The blocked calls will be recorded in the Call Log table. Call Blocking allows you to block unwanted calls and to prevent the router from making certain call types.

8.1 DND

Follow the steps below to configure DND.

- 1) Choose the menu **VoIP > DND & Call Blocking**, and locate the DND section.

- 2) Toggle on to enable **DND**.
- 3) Specify the days you want to block the incoming calls.
- 4) Set the start time and end time of the DND period you want to block incoming calls.
- 5) Click **Save** to apply the settings.

8.2 Call Blocking

Follow the steps below to configure Call Blocking.

■ Incoming Call Blocking

- 1) Choose the menu **VoIP > DND & Call Blocking**, locate the **Incoming Call Blocking** section, and click **Add**.

- 2) Select **Specific Number** and enter the telephone number that you want to block in the Number field, or **Anonymous Number** to block all unknown calls.
- 3) Click **Save** to apply the settings.

■ Outgoing Call Blocking

- 1) Choose the menu **VoIP > DND & Call Blocking**, locate the **Outgoing Call Blocking** section, and click **Add**.

Outgoing Call Blocking

Number Operation

outgoing: ---

Number Prefix:

OK Cancel

- Calls with Specific Number Prefix
- International
- Long Distance
- Landline
- Mobile

- 2) Select a call type from the drop-down list that you want to block. If **Call with Specific Number Prefix** is selected, add a telephone number prefix in the **Number Prefix** field.
- 3) Click **Save** to apply the settings.

Part 6

TP-Link ID

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. Bind to TP-Link ID

1 Overview

TP-Link ID provides a unified authentication service to allow you use a single email address to login TP-Link Community, Omada Cloud, Training system and manage the product with TP-Link Omada app. With a TP-Link ID, remembering endless usernames and passwords is a thing of the past.

2 Bind to TP-Link ID

Make sure the device is connected to the internet and its connection status is Online.

- 1) Go to **System Tools > Controller Settings** and enable Cloud-Based Controller Management.
- 2) Go to the **TP-Link ID** page. Enter your TP-Link ID and password to log in, and your device will be bound to this TP-Link ID.

TP-Link ID (Email):

Password:

[Log In](#)

Note: To create an account, retrieve or change your password, please visit <https://omada.tplinkcloud.com/>.

Note:

1. To create an account, retrieve or change your password, please visit <https://omada.tplinkcloud.com/>
 2. You can unbind the device from the TP-Link ID. Unbinding the device will clear all settings and affect features related to TP-Link ID (such as TP-Link DDNS). You need to log in again with your TP-Link ID to use these features.
-

Part 7

Configuring SMS (for 4G models)

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. SMS Configuration
3. SMS Inbox/Outbox Management
4. Router Command Configuration

1 Overview

The SMS module lets you manage SMS usage, check inbox messages, send messages and configure gateway commands.

1.1 Supported Features

SMS Quota

Set SMS quota to better manage SMS usage so that it does not exceed your set quota.

SMS Inbox/Outbox Message

Check inbox and outbox messages, and send messages.

Gateway Command

Send specific commands via SMS to interact with the device, and only specific users are allowed to perform these interactions.

2 SMS Configuration

You can set SMS quota to better manage SMS usage. You can also set policies related to sending and receiving inboxes.

2.1 Configuring SMS Quota

Choose the menu **SMS > SMS Settings > SMS Quota**, select a SIM card and configure the **SMS Quota**.

Figure 2-1 Configuring the SMS Quota

The screenshot shows two identical configuration panels for SIM1 and SIM2. Each panel includes the following fields and controls:

- Monthly SMS Messages:** A text input field containing '0' and a 'Correct' button.
- Count Mode:** Radio buttons for 'Total Count' and 'Monthly Count', with 'Monthly Count' selected.
- Start Date:** A text input field containing '1'.
- SMS Quota Limit:** A toggle switch that is currently turned on.
- Monthly Allowance:** A text input field containing '0'.
- SMS Alert:** A toggle switch that is currently turned off, with a note: "Note: An alert message will be counted as one text message."
- Save:** A button at the bottom of the configuration panel.

Total SMS Messages

When Total Count mode is selected, set the Total SMS Messages, and the total number of SMS sent will be displayed here. Long text messages exceeding the set length are split into multiple messages for counting. You can manually adjust the number of messages sent.

Monthly SMS Messages

When Monthly Count mode is selected, the number of SMS sent every month will be displayed here. Long text messages exceeding the set length are split into multiple messages for counting. You can manually adjust the number of messages sent.

Count Mode

Select count mode:

Total Count - The total number of text messages allowed to be sent.

Monthly Count - The number of text messages allowed to be sent within a one-month cycle, monthly count needs to select the start date of each monthly count cycle.

Start Date

The start date of the monthly count cycle. For example: 2nd, indicating the monthly count cycle is from the 2nd of this month to the 1st of the next month.

Total Allowance

SMS allowance, that is, how many SMS messages are allowed to be sent.

SMS Quota Limit

Whether to enable the SMS quota function, if enabled, you will not be able to send SMS when the SMS quota is reached.

Monthly Allowance	Monthly SMS allowance, that is, how many SMS messages are allowed to be sent before the next cycle.
SMS Alert	The SMS alert switch of the SMS quota, if the SMS quota function is turned on and the SMS alert is turned on, the SMS allowance alert message will be sent when the alert ratio reaches the set SMS allowance.
Usage Alert	Usage alert. For example, when 80% of the SMS allowance is reached, an SMS allowance alert message will be sent.
Alert SMS Phone Number	The number for receiving alert SMS receiving.
Send Test Message	Send a test message to confirm that the number can be used to receive SMS limit alert messages.

2.2 Configuring SMS Inbox Policy

Choose the menu **SMS > SMS Settings > SMS Inbox** to load the following page. Select the desired policy and click **Save** to save the settings.

Figure 2-2 Configuring the SMS Inbox Policy

If SMS inbox is full, delete the oldest SMS	When the inbox is full, delete the oldest SMS.
If SMS inbox is full, send e-mail alert to Administrator	When the inbox is full, an e-mail will be sent to the administrator, and the new SMS will be lost, and an alert email will be sent to administrator. You need to enable Mail Notification Setup in System Tools > Mail Notification , configure related parameters and check SMS Alert in Enable Mail Notification .
If SMS inbox is full, forward new SMS with e-mail to Administrator	When the inbox is full, forward new SMS with e-mail to Administrator. You need to enable Mail Notification Setup in System Tools > Mail Notification , configure related parameters and check SMS Alert in Enable Mail Notification .

3 SMS Inbox/Outbox Management

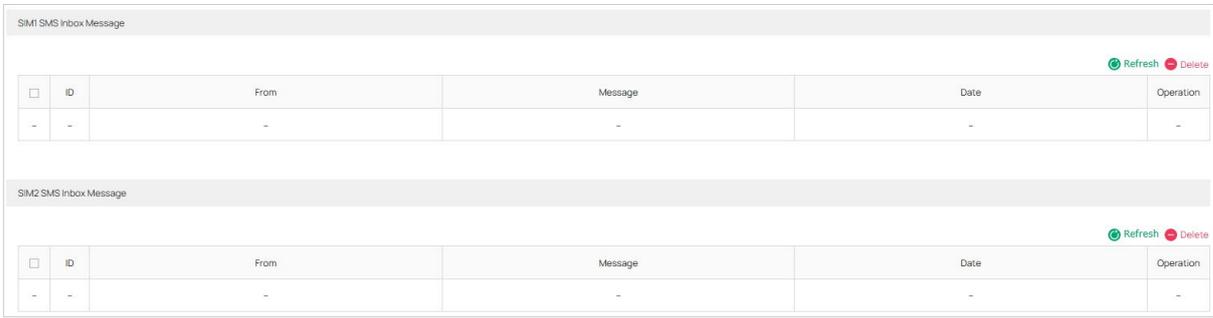
You can set SMS quota to better manage SMS usage. You can also set policies related to sending and receiving inboxes.

3.1 SMS Inbox Message

This box displays the messages you have received for each card.

Choose the menu **SMS >SMS Inbox Message** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Configuring the SMS Inbox Message



The screenshot shows two sections for SIM1 and SIM2 SMS Inbox Messages. Each section contains a table with the following columns: ID, From, Message, Date, and Operation. There are also Refresh and Delete buttons for each section.

ID	From	Message	Date	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

Refresh Click to refresh the inbox.

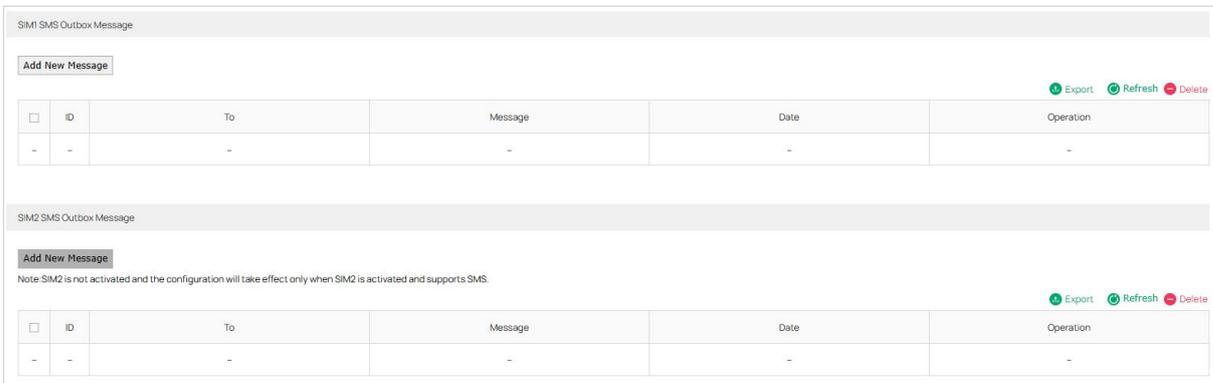
Delete Click to delete the messages you select.

3.2 SMS Outbox Message

This box displays the messages you have successfully sent from each card.

Choose the menu **SMS >SMS Outbox Message** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Configuring the SMS Outbox Message



The screenshot shows two sections for SIM1 and SIM2 SMS Outbox Messages. Each section contains a table with the following columns: ID, To, Message, Date, and Operation. There are also Add New Message, Export, Refresh, and Delete buttons for each section.

ID	To	Message	Date	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

Export Click to export the required SMS to the local.

Refresh Click to refresh the outbox.

Delete Click to delete the messages you select.

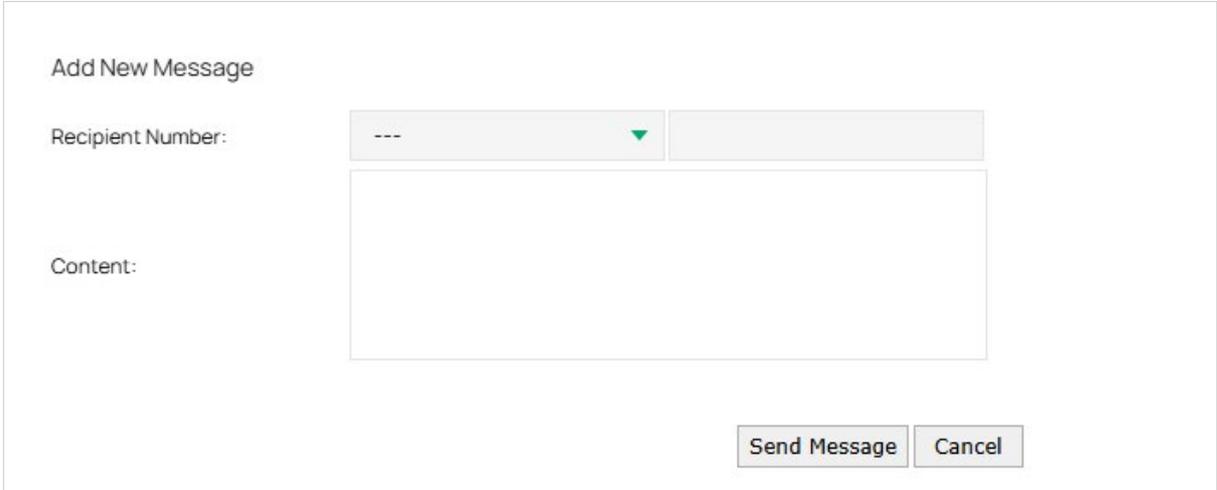
■ To send a message

Click **Add New Message** to send a message. Enter select the receiver's country code and enter the phone number and enter your message in the Content field. Click Send to send out your message.

 **Note:**

When two SIM cards are inserted, only one card can be activated and used for internet connection. The other inactivated card cannot send or receive text messages.

Figure 3-2 Sending a Message



Add New Message

Recipient Number: ---

Content:

Send Message Cancel

4 Router Command Configuration

You can send specific commands via SMS to interact with the device, and only specific users are allowed to perform these interactions.

Choose the menu **SMS > Router Command** to load the following page.

Figure 4-1 Configuring the Router Command

■ Reboot on SMS Message

- 1) Enable **Reboot on SMS Message**, enter the password for the control of device restart via SMS.
- 2) To reboot the gateway via SMS, send a message starting with "LTE Router Reboot", followed by Password/PIN (e.g. LTE Router Reboot 1234)

■ Reply with Gateway Status Message

- 1) Enable **Reply with Gateway Status Message**, enter the password for viewing device-related information and WAN port-related information via SMS.
- 2) Check the types of information you want to review.
- 3) To get status information from the gateway, send a message starting with 'LTE Router Status' and Password/PIN (e.g. LTE Router Status 1234) to the gateway's phone number.

■ Access Control List

- 1) Enable **Access Control List** to enable the allow list of the above functions, and only allow users in the list to interact with the device.
- 2) Select the country code and enter the allowed phone numbers. Note that the international telephone area code needs to be added before the number.

Part 8

USB

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. USB Modem Configuration
3. USB Storage

1 Overview

The USB Modem function is used to connect to the 3G/4G network of the ISP (Internet Service Provider) as the WAN connection, after you connect the 3G/4G USB modem to the USB port.

 **Note:**

- For LTE USB, the US versions of this device are compatible with USB dongle, mobile hotspot and mifi devices produced in the US after 2020 and devices compatible with AT&T, Verizon, and T-Mobile products. This device also supports Android Tethering and Plug-and-Play features. To use your Android phone as a Modem, just connect it to the LTE USB port with a USB cable.
 - You can click Connect/Disconnect to enable/disable the USB LTE function, or configure the Upload/Download Bandwidth according to your need.
-

2 USB Modem Configuration

The USB Modem function is used to connect to the 3G/4G network of the ISP (Internet Service Provider) as the WAN connection, after you connect the 3G/4G USB modem to the USB port.

To configure the USB Modem, follow these steps:

- 1) Confirm that the USB modem is connected to the USB port properly.
- 2) Specify the ISP information. You can specify the location and ISP, or you can set the Dial Number, APN, Username and Password manually.
- 3) Select the connection mode and configure the parameters according to the requirements of your ISP.
- 4) Click Save.

2.1 Configuring USB Modem automatically

Choose the menu **USB > USB Modem** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Configuring the USB Modem automatically

3G/4G

USB Modem: No USB modem connected.

Config Type: Auto

Location: Argentina

Mobile ISP: Claro

Connection Mode:
 Connect Automatically
 Connect Manually

Upload Bandwidth: 100000 Kbps (100-1000000)

Download Bandwidth: 100000 Kbps (100-1000000)

Authentication Type: Auto The default is Auto, do not change unless necessary.

PDP Type: IPv4

MTU Size (in bytes): 1480 The default is 1480, do not change unless necessary. (If you use a USB-to-RJ45 device, please modify the MTU to 1500)

Use the following DNS Servers: Enable

Advanced Settings

Connect Disconnect ✘ Disconnected

Save

In the **3G/4G** section, select the Config Type as Auto. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

USB Modem

Displays the status of the 3G/4G USB modem.

Location

Automatically selects and displays the region when the USB modem and SIM card are successfully identified. If not, select the region from the drop-down menu.

Mobile ISP

Displays the ISP of the 3G/4G network. If not automatically detected, select the ISP from the drop-down menu.

Connection Mode	Select the connection mode and configure the parameters according to the requirements of your ISP.
	Connect Automatically: In this mode, the Internet connection reconnects automatically anytime it gets disconnected.
	Connect Manually: In this mode, you can click the Connect or Disconnect button to control the Internet connection manually.
Upload Bandwidth	Specify the upstream bandwidth of the USB Modem. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Upstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of USB Modem and WAN ports after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.
Download Bandwidth	Specify the downstream bandwidth of the USB Modem. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Downstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of USB Modem and WAN ports after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.
Authentication Type	Select an authentication type. The default is Auto. Some ISPs require a specific authentication type, please confirm it with the ISP or keep the default settings.
	Auto: If Auto (default), the gateway automatically determines the authentication type used by the ISP.
	PAP: If PAP (Password Authentication Protocol), the gateway authenticates with the peer using two handshakes. Select this option if the ISP requires this authentication type.
	CHAP: If CHAP (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol), the gateway authenticates with the peer using three handshakes and validates the peer's identify periodically. Select this option if the ISP requires this authentication type.
PDP Type	Select the type of your PDP (Packet Data Protocol). PDP Type is the type of the IP address assigned to the PDP during 'PDP context activation' procedure. You can select IPv4, or IPv6, or IPv4&IPv6.
MTU Size	The default MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) size is 1480 bytes. Do not change it unless required by the ISP.
Use the Following DNS Servers	If the ISP provides DNS server IP addresses, select this checkbox and enter the Primary DNS and Secondary DNS (optional) IP addresses below. Otherwise, the DNS servers will be assigned dynamically by the ISP.
	Primary DNS: Enter the DNS IP address in dotted-decimal notation provided by the ISP.
	Secondary DNS: (Optional) Enter another DNS IP address in dotted-decimal notation provided by the ISP.

DHCP Option

Click Advanced Settings to display the option parameters.

Option 28: Specify the broadcast address to use on the client's subnet.

Option 50: Set request IP options for the DHCP client.

Option 51: Set the IP address lease time option for the the DHCP client.

Option 55: Set the request parameter list options for the DHCP client. The client uses this option to indicate which network configuration parameters need to be obtained from the server. The content of this option is the option value corresponding to the parameter requested by the client.

Option 60: Enter the value for DHCP Option 60. DHCP clients use this field to optionally identify the vendor type and configuration of a DHCP client. Mostly it is used in the scenario where the APs apply for different IP addresses from different servers according to the needs.

Option 61: Set client identification options. Currently the default is the LAN MAC address.

2.2 Configuring the USB Modem manually

Choose the menu **USB > USB Modem** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 Configuring the USB Modem manually

The screenshot shows the '3G/4G' configuration page. The 'USB Modem' status is 'No USB modem connected'. The 'Config Type' is set to 'Auto'. The 'Location' is 'Argentina' and the 'Mobile ISP' is 'Claro'. The 'Connection Mode' has 'Connect Automatically' selected. The 'Upload Bandwidth' and 'Download Bandwidth' are both set to '100000'. The 'Authentication Type' is 'Auto' and the 'PDP Type' is 'IPv4'. The 'MTU Size' is '1480'. There are checkboxes for 'Use The following DNS Servers' (disabled) and 'Advanced Settings'. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Connect', 'Disconnect', and 'Save'.

In the **3G/4G** section, select the Config Type as Manual. Enter the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

USB Modem

Displays the status of the 3G/4G USB modem.

Dial Number, APN, Username and Password manually

If the ISP is not listed in the Mobile ISP list, select this checkbox and enter the Dial Number, APN (Access Point Name), Username and Password that are provided by the ISP.

Connection Mode	<p>Select the connection mode and configure the parameters according to the requirements of your ISP.</p> <p>Connect Automatically: In this mode, the Internet connection reconnects automatically anytime it gets disconnected.</p> <p>Connect Manually: In this mode, you can click the Connect or Disconnect button to control the Internet connection manually.</p>
Upload Bandwidth	<p>Specify the upstream bandwidth of the USB Modem. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Upstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of USB Modem and WAN ports after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.</p>
Download Bandwidth	<p>Specify the downstream bandwidth of the USB Modem. This value is the upper limit of the Maximum Downstream Bandwidth on Transmission > Bandwidth Control page. Also, this value determines the bandwidth ratio of USB Modem and WAN ports after Bandwidth Based Balance Routing is enabled on Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings page.</p>
Authentication Type	<p>Select an authentication type. The default is Auto. Some ISPs require a specific authentication type, please confirm it with the ISP or keep the default settings.</p> <p>Auto: If Auto (default), the gateway automatically determines the authentication type used by the ISP.</p> <p>PAP: If PAP (Password Authentication Protocol), the gateway authenticates with the peer using two handshakes. Select this option if the ISP requires this authentication type.</p> <p>CHAP: If CHAP (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol), the gateway authenticates with the peer using three handshakes and validates the peer's identify periodically. Select this option if the ISP requires this authentication type.</p>
PDP Type	<p>Select the type of your PDP (Packet Data Protocol). PDP Type is the type of the IP address assigned to the PDP during 'PDP context activation' procedure. You can select IPv4, or IPv6, or IPv4&IPv6.</p>
MTU Size	<p>The default MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) size is 1480 bytes. Do not change it unless required by the ISP.</p>
Use the Following DNS Servers	<p>If the ISP provides DNS server IP addresses, select this checkbox and enter the Primary DNS and Secondary DNS (optional) IP addresses below. Otherwise, the DNS servers will be assigned dynamically by the ISP.</p> <p>Primary DNS: Enter the DNS IP address in dotted-decimal notation provided by the ISP.</p> <p>Secondary DNS: (Optional) Enter another DNS IP address in dotted-decimal notation provided by the ISP.</p>

3 USB Storage

3.1 Managing the USB Storage

Choose the menu **USB > USB Storage > USB Storage** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Managing the USB Storage

The screenshot displays a web interface for managing USB storage. It is divided into four main sections:

- Device:** Contains a 'Scan and Remove USB storage device.' section with a 'Scan' button and a table with columns: Disk Drivers, Partition, Total, and Operation. The table currently shows dashes in all cells.
- Backup:** Includes instructions to 'Click Backup to save a copy of your current settings. It is recommended to back up your settings before changing configurations or upgrading firmware.' Below this are checkboxes for 'Config' and 'Log', a 'Choose USB:' dropdown menu, and a 'Backup' button.
- Restore:** Includes instructions to 'Restore saved settings from a file.' Below this is a 'Choose USB:' dropdown menu and a 'Restore' button.
- Voice Mail:** Includes instructions to 'Select a path for storing voice mail.' Below this is a 'Choose USB:' dropdown menu, a text input field for a path, and a 'Select' button.

Plug your USB device into the USB port, then you can:

- 1) In the **Device** section, click scan to view USB storage information.
- 2) In the **Backup** section, click Backup to save a copy of your current settings. It is recommended to back up your settings before changing configurations or upgrading firmware.
- 3) In the **Restore** section, click **Restore** to restore saved settings form a file.
- 4) In the **Voice Mail** section, select a path in the USB storage device to save your voice mail.

3.2 Auto Backup

Choose the menu **USB > USB Storage > Auto Backup** to load the following page.

Figure 3-2 Managing Auto Backup

- 1) Enable Auto Backup.
- 2) Select the content to be saved to the USB storage device. We recommend that you back up your current settings before upgrading or modifying them.
- 3) Set the backup frequency.
- 4) Specify the maximum number of files can be auto backed up.
- 5) Set how long will the backup will be kept.
- 6) Choose the backup saving path.
- 7) Click **Apply** to save the settings.

3.3 Firmware Upgrade via USB

Choose the menu **USB > USB Storage > Firmware Upgrade via USB** to load the following page.

Figure 3-3 Managing Firmware Upgrade via USB

- 1) Click Browse to choose the file from the USB
- 2) Click Upgrade to upgrade the firmware.

Part 9

Configuring Preferences

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. IP Group Configuration
3. IPv6 Group Configuration
4. Time Range Configuration
5. VPN IP Pool Configuration
6. Service Type Configuration
7. Location Group Configuration
8. Domain Group Configuration

1 Overview

You can preset certain preferences, such as IP groups, time ranges, IP Pools and service types. These preferences will appear as options for you to choose when you are configuring the corresponding parameters for some functions. For example, the IP groups configured here will appear as options when you are configuring the effective IP addresses for functions like Bandwidth Control, Session Limit , Policy Routing and so on.

Once you configure a preference here, it can be applied to multiple functions, saving time during the configuration. For example, after configuring a time range in the **Preferences > Time Range > Time Range** page, you can use this time range as the effective time of Bandwidth Control rules, Link Backup rules, Policy Routing rules, and so on.

2 IP Group Configuration

In IP Group, you can preset IP groups that will appear as options for you to choose when configuring related parameters for some features, such as Bandwidth Control, Session Limit, and Policy Routing. After creating the entries, you can apply them to multiple configurations, which saves you from repeatedly setting up the same information.

To complete IP Group configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Click Add to add a new IP group.
- 2) Enter a name, select the preset IP address entries, and then configure the corresponding parameters for the new entry.
- 3) Select the created IP group entry in related configurations, such as Bandwidth Control, Session Limit, and Policy Routing.

2.1 Adding IP Address Entries

Choose the menu **Preferences > IP Group > IP Address** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Add an IP Address Entry

ID	Name	IP Address Type	IP Address Range	IP Address/Mask	Description	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-
1	IP_LAN	IP Address/Mask	192.168.188.0/24	192.168.188.0/24	IP_LAN	

Follow these steps to add an IP address entry:

- 1) Enter a name and specify the IP address range.

Name Enter a name for the IP address entry. Only letters, digits or underscores are allowed.

IP Address Type Specify the type of the IP address entry. Two types are provided:

IP Address Range: Specify a starting IP address and an ending IP address. A rule that references the IP address entry will be applied to the IP addresses within the range in the entry.

IP Address/Mask: Specify a network address and a subnet mask. A rule that references the IP address entry will be applied to the IP addresses within the range in the entry.

Description	Enter a brief description for the IP address entry to facilitate your management. It can be 50 characters at most.
--------------------	--

2) Click **OK**.

2.2 Grouping IP Address Entries

Choose the menu **Preferences > IP Group > IP Group** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 Create an IP Group

The screenshot shows a 'Group List' interface. At the top right, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons. Below is a table with columns: ID, Group Name, Address Name, Description, and Operation. The table contains two rows: one with ID 1, Group Name 'IPGROUP_ANY', Address Name '--', Description 'IPGROUP_ANY', and Operation '-'; and another with ID 2, Group Name 'IPGROUP_LAN', Address Name 'IP_LAN', Description 'IPGROUP_LAN', and Operation '-'. Below the table is a form with fields for 'Group Name', 'Address Name' (a dropdown menu), and 'Description' (with '(Optional)' next to it). There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom of the form.

Follow these steps to create an IP group and add IP address entries to the group:

1) Specify a name and configure the range to add an IP address range.

Group Name	Enter a name for the IP group. Only letters, digits or underscores are allowed.
Address Name	Select the IP address entry, and you can select more than one entry for one IP group. A rule that references the IP group will be applied to all the IP addresses in the group.
Description	Enter a brief description for the address group to facilitate your management. It can be 50 characters at most.

2) Click **OK**.

Note:

The IP group that has been referenced by a rule cannot be deleted unless the rule no longer references the IP group.

The IP group can be null, which means the IP group contains no IP address. A rule that references the address group will not take effect on any IP address.

3 IPv6 Group Configuration

In IPv6 Group, you can preset IPv6 groups that will appear as options for you to choose when configuring related parameters for some features, such as Bandwidth Control, Session Limit, and Policy Routing. After creating the entries, you can apply them to multiple configurations, which saves you from repeatedly setting up the same information.

To complete IPv6 Group configuration, follow these steps:

- 3) Click Add to add a new IPv6 group.
- 4) Enter a name, select the preset IPv6 address entries, and then configure the corresponding parameters for the new entry.
- 5) Select the created IPv6 group entry in related configurations, such as Bandwidth Control, Session Limit, and Policy Routing.

3.1 Adding IPv6 Address Entries

Choose the menu **Preferences > IPv6 Group > IPv6 Address** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Add an IPv6 Address Entry

ID	Name	IPv6 Address/Mask	Description	Operation
1	IPv6_LAN	fe80::0/64	IPv6_LAN	

Follow these steps to add an IPv6 address entry:

- 1) Enter a name and specify the IPv6 address range.

Name	Enter a name for the IPv6 address entry. Only letters, digits or underscores are allowed.
IPv6 Address/Mask	Specify a network address and a subnet mask. A rule that references the IPv6 address entry will be applied to the IPv6 addresses within the range in the entry.
Description	Enter a brief description for the IP address entry to facilitate your management. It can be 50 characters at most.

- 2) Click **OK**.

3.2 Grouping IPv6 Address Entries

Choose the menu **Preferences > IPv6 Group > IPv6 Group** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 3-2 Create an IPv6 Group

Group List + Add - Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Group Name	Address Name	Description	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-
Group Name: <input type="text"/> Address Name: <input type="text"/> --- Description: <input type="text"/> (Optional) <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>					
-	1	IPV6GROUP_ANY	-	IPV6GROUP_ANY	
-	2	IPV6GROUP_LAN	IPV6_LAN	IPV6GROUP_LAN	

Follow these steps to create an IPv6 group and add IPv6 address entries to the group:

- 1) Specify a name and configure the range to add an IPv6 address range.

Group Name	Enter a name for the IPv6 group. Only letters, digits or underscores are allowed.
Address Name	Select the IPv6 address entry, and you can select more than one entry for one IPv6 group. A rule that references the IPv6 group will be applied to all the IPv6 addresses in the group.
Description	Enter a brief description for the address group to facilitate your management. It can be 50 characters at most.

- 2) Click **OK**.

Note:

The IPv6 group that has been referenced by a rule cannot be deleted unless the rule no longer references the IPv6 group.

The IPv6 group can be null, which means the IPv6 group contains no IPv6 address. A rule that references the address group will not take effect on any IPv6 address.

4 Time Range Configuration

Time range configuration allows you to define time ranges by specifying the period in a day and days in a week. The time range configured here can be used as the effective time for multiple functions like Bandwidth Control, Link Backup, Policy Routing and so on.

Choose the menu **Preferences > Time Range > Time Range** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 4-1 Add a Time Range Entry

ID	Time Range Name	Working Time	Description	Operation
1	Any		Any time	

Follow these steps to add a time range entry:

- 1) Enter a name for the time range entry.

Time Range Name

Enter a name for the time range entry. Only letters, digits or underscores are allowed.

- 2) Choose a mode to set the time range. Two modes are provided: Working Calendar and Manually.

■ Working Calendar

Working Calendar mode allows you to set the time range on a calendar. In this mode, the effective time can be accurate to the hour.

Choose Working Calendar mode and click to load the following page.

Figure 4-2 Working Calendar Mode

System Time: 2025-8-1 Fri 19:50:28 UTC+08:00

	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday	Sunday
00:00							
01:00							
02:00							
03:00							
04:00							
05:00							
06:00							
07:00							
08:00							
09:00							
10:00							
11:00							
12:00							
13:00							
14:00							
15:00							
16:00							
17:00							
18:00							
19:00							
20:00							
21:00							
22:00							
23:00							
24:00							

Time

OK Reset Cancel

Select the time slices and click **OK** to set the time range. You can click the time slices, or alternatively drag the areas to select or deselect the time slices.

■ Manual

Manual mode allows you to enter the time range and select the effective days in a week manually. In this mode, effective time can be accurate to the minute.

Choose Manual mode to load the following page.

Figure 4-3 Manual Mode

Time Settings: Working Calendar Manual

Week: Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat Sun

Time Range: : - :

Week Select the effective days in a week.

Time Range Enter a start and end time. If the effective time is discontinuous, click to add another time range.

3) (Optional) Enter a brief description of this time range to make identifying it easier.

4) Click **OK**.

Note:

A time range entry that is being referenced by a rule cannot be deleted.

5 VPN IP Pool Configuration

In VPN IP Pool, you can preset VPN IP pools that will appear as options for you to choose when configuring L2TP VPN and PPTP VPN. After creating the entries, you can apply them to different rules, which saves you from repeatedly setting up the same information.

Choose the menu **Preferences > VPN IP Pool > VPN IP Pool** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-1 Add an IP Pool Entry

The screenshot shows the 'VPN IP Pool List' interface. At the top right, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following structure:

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	IP Pool Name	Starting IP Address	Ending IP Address	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-

Below the table is a form with the following fields and buttons:

- IP Pool Name:
- Starting IP Address:
- Ending IP Address:
- Buttons:

Follow these steps to add an IP Pool:

- 1) Enter a name and specify the starting and ending IP address of the IP Pool.

IP Pool Name

Enter a name for the IP Pool. Only letters, digits or underscores are allowed.

Starting IP Address/ Ending IP Address

Specify the starting and ending IP address. The range of the IP pool cannot overlap with the existing IP pools.

- 2) Click **OK**.

Note:

The range of the newly created IP pool cannot overlap with the IP range of the DHCP pool and other existing VPN IP pools.

The VPN IP pool entry that has been referenced by a rule cannot be deleted unless the rule no longer references the entry.

6 Service Type Configuration

In Service Type, you can define service type entries that will appear as matching conditions for you to choose when configuring the rules of Access Control in Firewall. The entries in gray are system predefined service types, and they cannot be edited or deleted. You can add other entries if your service type is not in the list.

Choose the menu **Preferences > Service Type > Service Type** to load the following page.

Figure 6-1 Service Type List

Service Type List						
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Service Type Name	Protocol	Detail	Description	Operation
-	1	ALL	0-255	--	ALL	
-	2	FTP	TCP	Source Port = 0-65535; Destination Port = 21-21	FTP	
-	3	SSH	TCP	Source Port = 0-65535; Destination Port = 22-22	SSH	
-	4	TELNET	TCP	Source Port = 0-65535; Destination Port = 23-23	TELNET	
-	5	SMTP	TCP	Source Port = 0-65535; Destination Port = 25-25	SMTP	
-	6	DNS	UDP	Source Port = 0-65535; Destination Port = 53-53	DNS	
-	7	HTTP	TCP	Source Port = 0-65535; Destination Port = 80-80	HTTP	
-	8	POP3	TCP	Source Port = 0-65535; Destination Port = 110-110	POP3	
-	9	SNTP	UDP	Source Port = 0-65535; Destination Port = 123-123	SNTP	
-	10	H.323	TCP	Source Port = 0-65535; Destination Port = 1720-1720	H.323	
-	11	SIP	TCP/UDP	Source Port = 0-65535; Destination Port = 5060	SIP	
-	12	ICMP_ALL	ICMP	Type =255; Code = 255	icmp	
-	13	ICMPv6	ICMPv6	--	icmpv6	

The entries in gray are system predefined service types. You can add other entries if your service type is not in the list.

Click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 6-2 Add a Service Type Entry

Service Type List						
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Service Type Name	Protocol	Detail	Description	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Service Type Name:

Protocol: TCP UDP TCP/UDP ICMP Other

Source Port Range: -

Destination Port Range: -

Description: (Optional)

Follow these steps to add a service type entry:

- 1) Enter a name for the service type.

Service Type Name

Enter a name for the service type. Only letters, digits or underscores are allowed.

- 2) Select the protocol for the service type. The predefined protocols include **TCP**, **UDP**, **TCP/UDP** and **ICMP**. For other protocols, select the option **Other**.

When **TCP**, **UDP**, or **TCP/UDP** is selected, the following page will appear.

Figure 6-3 TCP/UDP Protocol

Protocol: TCP UDP TCP/UDP ICMP Other

Source Port Range: -

Destination Port Range: -

**Source Port Range/
Destination Port Range**

Specify range of the source port and destination port of the TCP or UDP packets. Packets whose source port and destination port are both in the range are considered as the target packets.

When **ICMP** is selected, the following page will appear.

Figure 6-4 ICMP Protocol

Protocol: TCP UDP TCP/UDP ICMP Other

Type:

Code:

Type/Code

Specify the type and code of the ICMP packets. ICMP packets with both the type and code fields matched are considered as the target packets.

When **Other** is selected, the following page will appear.

Figure 6-5 Other Protocols

Protocol: TCP UDP TCP/UDP ICMP Other

Protocol Number:

Protocol Number

Specify the protocol number of the packets. Packets with the protocol number field matched are considered as the target packets.

- 3) (Optional) Enter a brief description of this service type to make identifying it easier.
- 4) Click **OK**.

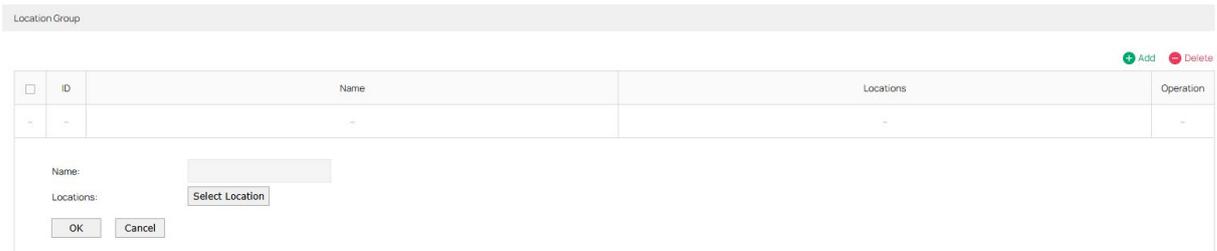
 **Note:**

A service type entry that is being referenced by a rule cannot be deleted unless the rule no longer references the entry.

7 Location Group Configuration

In Location Group, you can preset location groups, which will be used as options for you to choose when configuring functions such as Access Control. Once related entries are created, you can apply them to multiple configurations to avoid repeated settings.

- 1) Choose the menu **Preferences > Location Group**, and click **Add** to load the following page.



The screenshot displays the 'Location Group' configuration page. At the top, there is a header 'Location Group' with 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below this is a table with the following structure:

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	Locations	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

Below the table, there is a form with the following fields and buttons:

- Name:
- Locations:
-

- 2) Enter the group name.
- 3) Click **Select Location** to choose desired regions for the group.
- 4) Click **OK** to apply the settings.

8 Domain Group Configuration

You can preset entries with multiple Domain Name that will appear as options for you to choose when configuring Domain groups. After creating the entries, you can apply them to different Domain groups, which saves you from repeatedly setting up the same information.

Preset Domain groups will appear as options for you to choose when configuring related parameters for some features, such as Policy Routing. After creating the entries, you can apply them to multiple configurations, which saves you from repeatedly setting up the same information.

To configure Domain Group, follow the steps:

- 1) Add preset Domain Names
- 2) Add Domain Groups

8.1 Adding Domain Names

- 1) Choose the menu **Preferences > Domain Group > Domain Name** and click **Add** to load the following page.

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing domain names. At the top, there's a header 'Domain Name List' with 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below it is a table with the following structure:

ID	Name	Domain	Description	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

Below the table is a form with the following fields:

- Name: [input field]
- Domain: [input field]
- Description: [input field] (Optional)

At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 2) Enter the name of the Domain entry.
- 3) The domain name can be complete, such as `www.baidu.com` and `www.twitter.com`; it can also contain wildcards, such as `*.baidu.com`, which will match domain names such as `www.baidu.com`, `pam.baidu.com` and `baidu.com` in special cases.
- 4) Enter a brief description for the Domain entry. It can be 50 characters at most.
- 5) Click **OK** to apply the settings.

8.1 Adding Domain Groups

- 1) Choose the menu **Preferences > Domain Group > Domain Group** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Group List + Add - Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Group Name	Domain Group	Description	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-
<p>Group Name: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Domain Group: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Description: <input type="text"/> (Optional)</p> <p><input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p>					
-	1	domain_any	domain_any	-	

- 2) Enter the name of the Domain group.
- 3) Select the Domain Name entry, and you can select 1-16 entry for one Domain group. A rule that references the Domain group will be applied to all the Domain Name in the group.
- 4) Enter a brief description for the Domain group. It can be 50 characters at most.
- 5) Click **OK** to apply the settings.

Part 10

Configuring Transmission

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. NAT Configurations
3. Bandwidth Control Configuration
4. Quality of Services Configurations
5. Session Limit Configurations
6. Load Balancing Configurations
7. Routing Configurations

1 Overview

1.1 Overview

Transmission function provides multiple traffic control measures for the network. You can configure the transmission function according to your actual needs.

1.2 Supported Features

The transmission module includes NAT, Bandwidth Control, Session Limit, Load Balancing and Routing.

NAT

NAT (Network Address Translation) is the translation between private IP and public IP. NAT provides a way to allow multiple private hosts to access the public network using one public IP at the same time, which alleviates the shortage of IP addresses. Furthermore, NAT strengthens the LAN (Local Area Network) security since the address of LAN host never appears on the internet. The gateway supports following NAT features:

- One-to-One NAT

One-to-One NAT creates a relationship between a private IP address and a public IP address. A device with a private IP address can be accessed through the corresponding valid public IP address.

- Virtual Servers

When you build up a server in the local network and want to share it on the internet, Virtual Servers can realize the service and provide it to the internet users. At the same time Virtual Servers can keep the local network safe as other services are still invisible from the internet.

- Port Triggering

Port Triggering is a feature used to dynamically forward traffic on a certain port to a specific server on the local network. When a host in the local network initiates a connection to the triggering port, all the external ports will be opened for subsequent connections. The gateway can record the IP address of the host, when the data from the internet returns to the external ports, the gateway can forward them to the corresponding host. Port Triggering is mainly applied to online games, VoIPs, video players and so on.

- NAT-DMZ

When a PC is set to be a DMZ (Demilitarized Zone) host in the local network, it is totally exposed to the internet, which can realize the unlimited bidirectional communication between internal hosts and external hosts. The DMZ host becomes a virtual server with all ports opened. When you are not clear about which ports to open in some special applications, such as IP camera and database software, you can set the PC to be a DMZ host.

- **ALG**

Some special protocols such as FTP, H.323, SIP, IPSec and PPTP will work properly only when ALG (Application Layer Gateway) service is enabled.

- **Disable NAT**

With a Disable NAT rule, LAN-side devices can directly access the WAN side through their own IP addresses, or WAN-side devices can directly access the LAN side.

Bandwidth Control

Bandwidth Control function allows you to configure rules to limit various data flows. In this way, you can optimize the network performance by reasonably utilizing the bandwidth.

Quality of Services

Quality of Services allows you to configure rules to limit various data flows.

Session Limit

Session limit feature limits the number of sessions that specific sources can use. This feature can prevent the network resources and bandwidth from being exhausted by some hosts which use too many sessions at one time, and therefore optimizes network performance.

Load Balancing

You can configure the traffic sharing mode of the WAN ports to optimize the resource utilization and processing capability of servers. The gateway will switch all the new sessions from dropped lines automatically to the others to keep an always on-line network.

Routing

You can configure policy routing rules and static routing.

Policy routing provides a more accurate way to control the routing based on the policy defined by the network administrator.

Static routing is a form of routing that is configured manually by adding non-aging entries into a routing table. The manually-configured routing information guides the gateway in forwarding data packets to the specific destination.

RIP(Routing Information Protocol) is a dynamic router protocol with Distance Vector Algorithms.

OSPF(Open Shortest Path First) is an Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP) used to make routing decisions in a single autonomous system (AS).

2 NAT Configurations

With NAT configurations, you can:

- Configure the One-to-One NAT.
- Configure the Virtual Servers.
- Configure the Port Triggering.
- Configure the NAT-DMZ.
- Configure the ALG.
- Configure the Disable NAT

2.1 Configuring the One-to-One NAT

Choose the menu **Transmission > NAT > One-to-One NAT** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Configuring the One-to-One NAT

The screenshot displays the 'One-to-One NAT List' interface. At the top right, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Name, Interface, Original IP, Translated IP, DMZ Forwarding, Description, Status, and Operation. The table currently contains one row with dashes in all cells. Below the table is a configuration form with the following fields:

- Name: [Text input field]
- Interface: [Dropdown menu]
- Original IP: [Text input field]
- Translated IP: [Text input field]
- DMZ Forwarding: Enable
- Description: [Text input field] (Optional)
- Status: Enable

At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Follow these steps to configure the One-to-One NAT:

- 1) Specify the name of the One-to-One NAT rule and configure other related parameters.

Interface

Specify the effective interface for the rule only when the connection type is Static IP. If you choose multiple ports, the entry will be applied to all selected ports simultaneously.

Original IP

Specify the private IP address for the rule. The original IP address cannot be the broadcast address and the IP address of the LAN interface.

Translated IP	Specify the public IP address for the rule. The translated IP address cannot be the broadcast address and the IP address of the WAN interface.
DMZ Forwarding	Check the box to enable DMZ Forwarding. The packets transmitted to the translated IP address will be forwarded to the host of original IP address if DMZ Forwarding is enabled.
Description	(Optional) Enter a brief description for the rule to facilitate your management.
Status	Check the box to enable the rule.

2) Click **OK**.

Note:

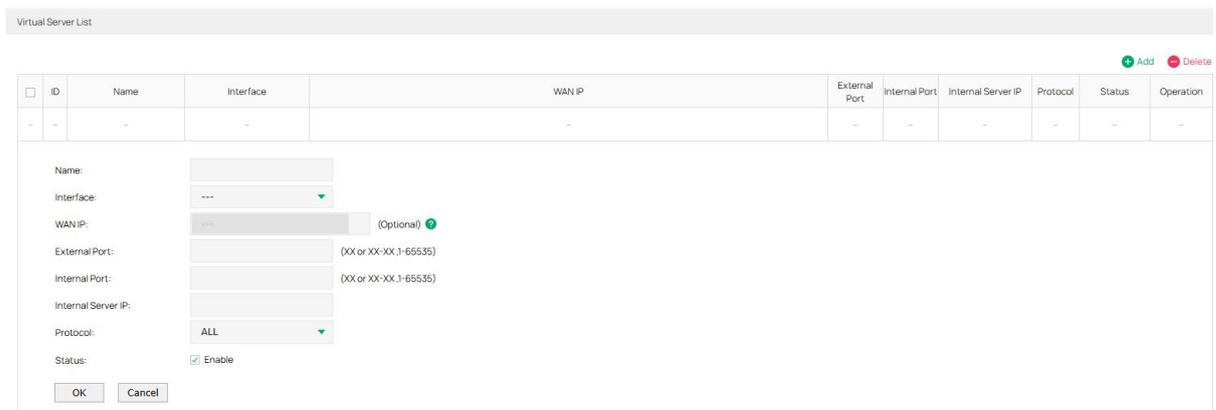
One-to-One NAT takes effect only when the connection type of WAN is Static IP.

When setting open ports for NAT, do not select the reserved ports (1723/1701 is reserved for PPTP/L2TP, 1194 is reserved for OpenVPN, and the specific ports you reserved).

2.2 Configuring the Virtual Servers

Choose the menu **Transmission > NAT > Virtual Servers** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 Configuring the Virtual Servers



Virtual Server List

ID	Name	Interface	WAN IP	External Port	Internal Port	Internal Server IP	Protocol	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Name:
 Interface:
 WAN IP: (Optional) 
 External Port: (XX or XX-XX, 1-65535)
 Internal Port: (XX or XX-XX, 1-65535)
 Internal Server IP:
 Protocol: ALL
 Status: Enable

Follow these steps to configure the Virtual Servers:

1) Specify the name of the Virtual Server rule and configure other related parameters.

Interface	Specify the effective interface for the rule. If you choose multiple ports, the entry will be applied to all selected ports simultaneously.
WAN IP	Specify the WAN Alias IP for the rule. If you choose multiple IPs, the entry will be applied to all selected IPs simultaneously.
External Port	Enter the service port or port range of the gateway for external network access. The ports or port ranges cannot overlap with those of other virtual server rules.

Internal Port	Enter the service port or port range of the gateway for external network access. The ports or port ranges cannot overlap with those of other virtual server rules.
Internal Server IP	Enter the IP address of the specified internal server for the entry. All the requests from the internet to the specified LAN port will be redirected to this host.
Protocol	Specify the protocol used for the rule. ALL: Data packets are transmitted based on TCP or UDP protocols. TCP: Data packets are transmitted based on TCP protocol. UDP: Data packets are transmitted based on UDP protocol.
Status	Check the box to enable the rule.

2) Click **OK**.

2.3 Configuring the Port Triggering

Choose the menu **Transmission > NAT > Port Triggering** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-3 Configuring the Port Triggering

Port Triggering List

ID	Name	Interface	WAN IP	Trigger Port	Trigger Protocol	Incoming Port	Incoming Protocol	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Name:
 Interface:
 WAN IP: (Optional) +
 Trigger Port: (XX or XX-XX)
 Trigger Protocol: TCP/UDP
 Incoming Port: (XX or XX-XX)
 Incoming Protocol: TCP/UDP
 Status: Enable

Follow these steps to configure the Port Triggering:

1) Specify the name of the Port Triggering rule and configure other related parameters.

Interface	Specify the effective interface for the rule. If you choose multiple ports, the entry will be applied to all selected ports simultaneously.
WAN IP	Specify the WAN Alias IP for the rule. If you choose multiple IPs, the entry will be applied to all selected IPs simultaneously.
Trigger Port	Enter the trigger port or port range from which the data flows out. Each entry supports at most 5 groups of trigger ports. For example, you can enter 1 or 1-2. Note that the ports or port ranges cannot overlap with those of other port triggering rules.

Trigger Protocol	Specify the protocol for the trigger port. ALL: Data packets are transmitted based on TCP or UDP protocols. TCP: Data packets are transmitted based on TCP protocol. UDP: Data packets are transmitted based on UDP protocol.
Incoming Port	Enter the incoming port or port range from which the data is received. Each entry supports at most 5 groups of incoming ports. For example, you can enter 1-2 or 11-12. Note that the ports or port ranges cannot overlap with those of other port triggering rules.
Incoming Protocol	Specify the protocol for the incoming port. ALL: Data packets are transmitted based on TCP or UDP protocols. TCP: Data packets are transmitted based on TCP protocol. UDP: Data packets are transmitted based on UDP protocol.
Status	Check the box to enable the rule.

2) Click **OK**.

2.4 Configuring the NAT-DMZ

Choose the menu **Transmission > NAT > NAT-DMZ** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-4 Configuring the NAT-DMZ

The screenshot shows the 'NAT-DMZ List' configuration page. At the top right, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Name, Interface, WAN IP, Host IP Address, Status, and Operation. The table currently contains one row with dashes in all cells. Below the table is a configuration form with the following fields: Name (text input), Interface (dropdown menu), WAN IP (text input with an 'Optional' icon), Host IP Address (text input), and Status (checkbox labeled 'Enable'). At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Follow these steps to configure the NAT-DMZ:

1) Specify the name of the NAT-DMZ rule and configure other related parameters.

Interface	Specify the effective interface for the rule.
WAN IP	Specify the WAN Alias IP for the rule. If you choose multiple IPs, the entry will be applied to all selected IPs simultaneously.
Host IP Address	Specify the host IP address for NAT-DMZ.

Status Check the box to enable the rule.

2) Click **OK**.

2.5 Configuring the ALG

Choose the menu **Transmission > NAT > ALG** to load the following page.

Figure 2-5 Configuring the ALG

Enable related ALG according to your needs and click **Save**.

2.6 Configuring the Disable NAT

Choose the menu **Transmission > NAT > Disable NAT**, and click **Add** to load the following page.

Note:

If you add a Disable NAT rule, a Policy Routing rule with the "Priority" mode is automatically added. When the corresponding WAN port is online, the matched traffic will be forwarded by this WAN without NAT translation.

If you want to forward the traffic to a specific WAN port regardless of the WAN's online/offline status, add a Policy Routing rule with the "Only" mode on the Routing > Policy Routing page.

Figure 2-6 Configuring the Disable NAT

Follow these steps to configure the Disable NAT:

1) Specify the name of the Disable NAT rule and configure other related parameters.

Name Enter a name to identify the rule.

Interface	Select the WAN port to send out packets. A WAN port can be used in one Disable NAT rule only.
LAN	Select one or more LAN networks. A LAN network can be used in one Disable NAT rule only.
Description	Enter a description for identification.
Status	Check the box to enable the rule.

2) Click **OK**.

3 Bandwidth Control Configuration

Bandwidth Control functions to control the bandwidth by configuring rules for limiting various data flows. In this way, the network bandwidth can be reasonably distributed and utilized.

Choose the menu **Transmission > Bandwidth Control** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Configuring the Bandwidth Control

Follow these steps to configure the Bandwidth Control rule:

- 1) In the **Bandwidth Control Config** Section, enable Bandwidth Control function globally.

Enable Bandwidth Control

Check the box to enable Bandwidth Control globally.

Bandwidth Control Threshold

With “Enable Bandwidth Control” selected, you can specify a percentage, and the Bandwidth Control will take effect only when the bandwidth usage reaches the percentage you specified.

- 2) In the **Bandwidth Control Rule List** section, click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 3-2 Add Bandwidth Control rules

Specify the name of the Bandwidth Control rule and configure other related parameters. Then click **OK**.

WAN	Select the WAN port which the rule applies to.
Source Type	Select the source type of the created rule, Network or IP Group.
Network	The rule will apply to the specific LAN networks. With this option selected, choose the network. If you want to create or customize networks, go to Wired Networks > LAN .
IP Group	Select the IP groups you have created from the drop-down list. With IPGROUP_ANY selected, the rule will apply to all clients. If no desired IP groups have been created, go to Preferences > IP Group page to create one.
Maximum Upstream Bandwidth	Specify the limit of upstream bandwidth for the specific user to transmit traffic to the internet through the gateway.
Maximum Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the limit of downstream bandwidth for the specific user to receive traffic from the internet through the gateway.
Mode	Select the bandwidth control mode for the controller users. Shared: The total bandwidth for all users is equal to the specified values in upstream and downstream bandwidth. Individual: The bandwidth for each user is equal to the specified value in upstream and downstream bandwidth.
Effective Time	Specify the time for the rule to take effect. Any means it always takes effect. If no desired time ranges have been configured, go to Preferences > Time Range page to create one.
Description	Enter a brief description for the rule.
ID	Assign a number to the rule to reorder the list.
Status	Check the box to enable the rule.

4 Quality of Services Configurations

4.1 Configuring Bandwidth Control

Bandwidth Control allows you to configure rules to limit various data flows. In this way, you can optimize the network performance by reasonably utilizing the bandwidth.

Choose the menu **Transmission > Quality of Services > Bandwidth Control** to load the following page.

Figure 4-1 Configuring the Bandwidth Control

Index	Status	Direction	Inbound/Outbound Bandwidth	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	Operation
WAN/LAN1	Disabled	Out	↓1000000Kbps↑1000000Kbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	
---	Disabled	Out	↓1000000Kbps↑1000000Kbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	
---	Disabled	Out	↓1000000Kbps↑1000000Kbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	
---	Disabled	Out	↓1000000Kbps↑1000000Kbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	
---	Disabled	Out	↓1000000Kbps↑1000000Kbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	
DSL WAN	Disabled	Out	↓350000Kbps↑100000Kbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	
LTE	Disabled	Out	↓300000Kbps↑50000Kbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	

Follow these steps to configure the Bandwidth Control rule:

- 1) Select a WAN interface, enable **Bandwidth Control** function.
- 2) In the **Operation** column, click **Edit** to load the following page.

Figure 4-2 Edit Bandwidth Control rules

Index	Status	Direction	Inbound/Outbound Bandwidth	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	Operation
WAN/LAN1	Disabled	Out	↓1000000Kbps↑1000000Kbps	25 %	25 %	25 %	25 %	

Index: WAN/LAN1

UDP Bandwidth Control: Enable

Limited Bandwidth Ratio: %

Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize: Enable

Status: Enable

Direction:

Inbound Bandwidth: Kbps(100-1000000)

Outbound Bandwidth: Kbps(100-1000000)

■ Class 1:	<input type="text" value="25"/>	%
■ Class 2:	<input type="text" value="25"/>	%
■ Class 3:	<input type="text" value="25"/>	%
■ Others:	<input type="text" value="25"/>	%

Configure the related parameters. Then click **OK**.

Index

Displays the WAN port. You can configure the QoS rule for a WAN port only when the port is enabled.

UDP Bandwidth Control	Check the box to enable UDP bandwidth control.
Limited Bandwidth Ratio	When UDP Bandwidth Control is enabled, specify the maximum bandwidth ratio allowed for UDP traffic in each class.
Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize	Check the box to prioritize outbound TCP ACK packets.
Status	Enable or disable QoS for the current entry.
Direction	Specify the direction of the controlled traffic. "Out" means control sending packets. "In" means receiving packets. "Both" means both are controlled.
Inbound/Outbound Bandwidth	Enter the maximum threshold of the inbound/outbound bandwidth.
Class1/Class2/Class3/Others	Specify the percentage of WAN bandwidth assigned to class1, class2, class3 and other traffic flowing through the WAN port.

4.2 Configuring Class Rule

Class Rule allows you to add or delete class rules. Rules will be matched from top to bottom according to the rule sequence number. When the traffic matches a rule, it will be assigned to the corresponding class and will not continue to match down.

Choose the menu **Transmission > Quality of Services > Class Rule**, click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 4-3 Configuring the Class Rule

Configure the related parameters. Then click **OK**.

Status	Check the box to enable the rule.
IP Version	Specify the protocol version: IPv4 or IPv6.

Local Address	Match the source IP address of the traffic. For IPv4 protocol, you can use the IP Group object configured in the Preferences > IP Group module. For the IPv6 protocol, you can use the IPv6 Group object configured in the Preferences > IPv6 Group module. QoS does not take effect on the traffic of LAN > LAN. When configuring the class rule, Local Address and Remote Address cannot select IPGROUP on the LAN side at the same time.
Remote Address	Match the destination IP address of the traffic. For IPv4 protocol, you can use the IP Group object configured in the Preferences > IP Group module. For the IPv6 protocol, you can use the IPv6 Group object configured in the Preferences > IPv6 Group module. QoS does not take effect on the traffic of LAN > LAN. When configuring the class rule, Local Address and Remote Address cannot select IPGROUP on the LAN side at the same time.
DSCP	Match the DSCP value of the traffic.
Service Type	Match the port number of the traffic. Select the service type object defined in the Preference > Service Type module.
QoS Class	Select the category of traffic that meets the rule.

4.3 Configuring VoIP Prioritization

You can enable the first priority for VoIP SIP/RTP traffic.

Choose the menu **Transmission > Quality of Services > VoIP Prioritization** to load the following page.

Figure 4-4 Configuring the VoIP Prioritization

Configure the related parameters. Then click **Save**.

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP	Check the box to enable prioritize VoIP traffic.
SIP UDP Port	Enter the UDP port ID of the VoIP traffic.

4.4 Configuring Tag Prioritization

You can add a DSCP or Precedence value for traffic in different classes.

Choose the menu **Transmission > Quality of Services > Tag Outbound Traffic** to load the following page.

Figure 4-5 Configuring the Tag Prioritization



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Tag Prioritization". It contains four rows, each representing a traffic class: "Class 1:", "Class 2:", "Class 3:", and "Others:". Each row has a checkbox labeled "Add DSCP or Precedence value" and a dropdown menu. All checkboxes are currently unchecked, and all dropdown menus show "---". At the bottom left of the window is a "Save" button.

Check the box for your desired class and select the DSCP or Precedence value. Then click **Save**.

5 Session Limit Configurations

To complete Session Limit configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Configure session limit.
- 2) View the session limit information.

5.1 Configuring Session Limit

Choose the menu **Transmission > Session Limit > Session Limit** to load the following page.

Figure 5-1 Configuring the Session Limit

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for Session Limits. It is divided into two main sections: 'General' and 'Session Limit Rule List'. In the 'General' section, there is a checkbox for 'Enable Session Limit' which is currently unchecked, and a 'Save' button below it. The 'Session Limit Rule List' section contains a table with the following columns: ID, Name, Group, Max Sessions, Status, and Operation. The table is currently empty, and there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons in the top right corner of the table area.

Follow these steps to configure the Session Limit rule:

- 1) In the **General** Section, enable Session Limit function globally.
- 2) In the **Session Limit Rule List** section, click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-2 Add Session Limit rules

The screenshot shows a dialog box for adding a new Session Limit rule. It features a table with columns: ID, Name, Group, Max Sessions, Status, and Operation. Below the table is a form with the following fields: 'Name' (text input), 'Group' (dropdown menu), 'Max Sessions' (text input), and 'Status' (checkbox labeled 'Enable', which is checked). At the bottom of the dialog are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Specify the name of the Session Limit rule and configure other related parameters. Then click **OK**.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| Group | Specify the address group to which the rule will be applied. The IP Group referenced here can be created on the Preferences > IP Group page. |
| Max Sessions | Enter the maximum number of sessions that a LAN host can use. The gateway will limit the sessions of the source when its number exceeds the maximum value. |
| Status | Check the box to enable the rule. |

5.2 Viewing the Session Limit Information

Choose the menu **Transmission > Session Limit > Session Monitor** to load the following page.

Figure 5-3 Viewing the Session Limit Information

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Session Monitor List". Below the title, it displays "Entry Count: 0" and a "Refresh" button with a circular arrow icon. A table with four columns is shown below: "ID", "IP", "Max Sessions", and "Current Sessions". The table contains one row with dashes "-" in each column.

ID	IP	Max Sessions	Current Sessions
-	-	-	-

View the Session Limit information of hosts configured with Session Limit. Click the **Refresh** button to get the latest information.

6 Load Balancing Configurations

With load balancing configurations, you can:

- Configure the load balancing
- Configure the link backup
- Configure the online detection

6.1 Configuring the Load Balancing

Choose the menu **Transmission > Load Balancing > Basic Settings** to load the following page.

Figure 6-1 Configuring the Load Balancing

The screenshot shows a configuration interface with two main sections: 'General' and 'Basic Settings'. In the 'General' section, the checkbox 'Enable Load Balancing' is checked, and there is a 'Save' button below it. In the 'Basic Settings' section, the checkbox 'Enable Application Optimized Routing' is checked, and the checkbox 'Enable Bandwidth Based Balance Routing on port(s):' is unchecked. To the right of the second checkbox is a dropdown menu. There is a 'Save' button at the bottom of the 'Basic Settings' section.

Follow these steps to configure the load balancing:

- 1) In the **General** Section, enable load balancing function globally and click **Save**.
- 2) In the **Basic Settings** section, select the appropriate method for load balancing and click **Save**.

Enable Application Optimized Routing

With Application Optimized Routing enabled, the gateway will consider the source IP address and destination IP address (or destination port) of the packets as a whole and record the WAN port they pass through. Then packets with the same source IP address and destination IP address (or destination port) will be forwarded to the recorded WAN port. This feature ensures that multi-connected applications work properly.

Enable Bandwidth Based Balance Routing on port(s)

Select the WAN port from the drop-down list on which bandwidth-based balance routing is enabled.

6.2 Configuring the Link Backup

With Link Backup function, the gateway will switch all the new sessions from dropped lines automatically to another to keep an always on-line network.

Choose the menu **Transmission > Load Balancing > Link Backup** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 6-2 Configuring the Link Backup Rule

The screenshot shows the 'Link Backup Rule List' configuration page. At the top right, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Primary WAN, Backup WAN, Mode, Effective Time, Status, and Operation. The table currently contains one row with dashes in all cells. Below the table is a configuration form with the following fields:

- Primary WAN: A dropdown menu with '---' selected.
- Backup WAN: A dropdown menu with '---' selected.
- Mode: Two radio buttons. 'Timing' is selected. The other is 'Failover(Enable backup link when all primary WANs fail)'.
- Effective Time: A dropdown menu with 'Any' selected.
- Status: A checkbox labeled 'Enable' which is checked.

At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Configure the following parameters on this page and click **OK**.

Primary WAN

Specify the primary WAN port. You can choose one primary WAN port, or choose multiple primary WAN ports to perform load balance.

Backup WAN

Specify the backup WAN port to back up the traffic for the primary WAN port under the specified condition.

Mode

Specify the mode as Timing or Failover.

Timing: Link Backup will be enabled if the specified effective time is reached. All the traffic on the primary WAN will switch to the backup WAN at the beginning of the effective time; the traffic on the backup WAN will switch to the primary WAN at the ending of the effective time.

Failover(Enable backup link when any primary WANs fails): Link Backup will be enabled when any primary WANs fails. Load balancing will be enabled on the backup WAN. The traffic on the backup WAN will switch to the primary WAN when the failed primary WANs works properly.

Failover(Enable backup link when all primary WANs fail): Link Backup will be enabled only when all primary WANs fail. All the traffic on the primary WAN will switch to the backup WAN. The traffic on the backup WAN will switch to the primary WAN when all the primary WANs works properly.

Effective Time

Specify the time for the rule to take effect. Any means it takes effect at any time. If no desired time ranges have been configured, go to **Preferences > Time Range** page to create one.

Status

Check the box to enable the rule.

6.3 Configuring the Online Detection

With Online Detection function, you can detect the online status of the WAN port.

Choose the menu **Transmission > Load Balancing > Online Detection** and click  to load the following page.

Figure 6-3 Configuring the Online Detection

ID	Port	Port Status	Operation
1	WAN/LAN1	Offline	
<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Port: <input type="text" value="WAN/LAN1"/></p> <p>Mode: <input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Manual <input type="radio"/> Always Online</p> <p>Ping: <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>DNS Lookup: <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> </div>			
2	DSL WAN	Offline	
3	LTE	Offline	

Configure the following parameters on this page and click **OK**.

Port	Displays the name of WAN Port.
Mode	Select the online detection mode. <p>Auto: In Auto Mode, the DNS server of the WAN port will be selected as the destination for DNS Lookup to detect whether the WAN is online.</p> <p>Manual: In Manual Mode, you can configure the destination IP address for PING and DNS Lookup manually to detect whether the WAN is online.</p> <p>Always Online: In Always Online Mode, the status of the port will always be online.</p>
Ping	With "Manual Mode" selected, specify the destination IP for Ping. The corresponding port will ping the IP address to detect whether the WAN port is online. 0.0.0.0 means Ping detection is disabled.
DNS Lookup	With Manual Mode selected, specify the IP address of DNS server. The corresponding port will perform the DNS lookup using default domain name to detect whether the WAN port is online. 0.0.0.0 means DNS Lookup is disabled.

7 Routing Configurations

With routing configurations, you can:

- Configure the static routing
- Configure the policy routing rule
- View the routing table
- Configure RIP
- Configure OSPF

7.1 Configuring the Static Routing

Choose the menu **Transmission > Routing > Static Route** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 7-1 Configuring the Static Routing

ID	Name	Destination IP	Subnet Mask	Next Hop	Interface	Metric	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Name:
 Destination IP:
 Subnet Mask:
 Next Hop:
 Interface:
 Metric: (0-15)
 Description: (Optional)
 Status: Enable

Specify the name of the static route entry and configure other related parameters. Then click **OK**.

Destination IP Specify the destination IP address the route leads to.

Subnet Mask Specify the subnet mask of the destination network.

Next Hop Specify the IP address to which the packet should be sent next.

Interface Specify the physical network interface through which this route is accessible.

Metric Define the priority of the route. A smaller value means a higher priority. The default value is 0. It is recommended to keep the default value.

Description Enter a brief description for the rule.

Status Check the box to enable the rule.

7.2 Configuring the Policy Routing

Choose the menu **Transmission > Routing > Policy Routing** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 7-2 Configuring the Policy Routing

Policy Routing Rule List + Add - Delete

ID	Name	Service Type	Source	Destination	WAN	Effective Time	Mode	Description	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Name:

Service Type: ALL

Source Type: IP Group

Source: IPGROUP_ANY

Destination Type: IP Group

Destination: IPGROUP_ANY

WAN: ---

Effective Time: Any

Mode: Priority

Description: (Optional)

ID: (Optional)

Status: Enable

Specify the name of the policy routing entry and configure other related parameters. Then click **OK**.

Service Type Specify the service type for the rule.

Source IP Enter the source IP range for the rule. 0.0.0.0 - 0.0.0.0 means any IP is acceptable.

Destination IP Enter the destination IP range for the rule. 0.0.0.0 - 0.0.0.0 means any IP is acceptable.

WAN Specify the outgoing port for the rule. If you choose multiple ports, the entry will be applied to all selected ports simultaneously.

Effective Time Specify the effective time for the rule.

Mode Specify the policy routing mode for the rule.

Priority: In Priority Mode, the rule depends on the online detection result. If any WAN port that you specify is online, the rule will take effect. If all the WAN ports that you specify are offline, the rule will not take effect.

Only: In Only Mode, the rule always takes effect regardless of the WAN port status or online detection result.

Description Enter a brief description for the rule.

Status Check the box to enable the rule.

7.3 Viewing the Routing Table

Choose the menu **Transmission > Routing > Routing Table** to load the following page.

Figure 7-3 Routing Table

Routing Table						
Entry Count: 1						
ID	Destination IP	Subnet Mask	Next Hop	Interface	Metric	
1	192.168.188.0	255.255.255.0	0.0.0.0	LAN	0	

The **Routing Table** shows the information of the current route entries.

Destination IP Displays the destination IP address the route leads to.

Subnet Mask Displays the subnet mask of the destination network.

Next Hop Displays the gateway IP address to which the packet should be sent next.

Interface Displays the physical network interface through which this route is accessible.

Metric Displays the metric to reach the destination IP address.

7.4 Configuring RIP

RIP(Routing Information Protocol) is a dynamic gateway protocol with Distance Vector Algorithms. You could config the protocol below to active as you like.

Choose the menu **Transmission > Routing > RIP**.

- 1) Check the box to enable the **RIP** function.
- 2) In the **Global Config** section to configure the following parameters, then click **Save**.

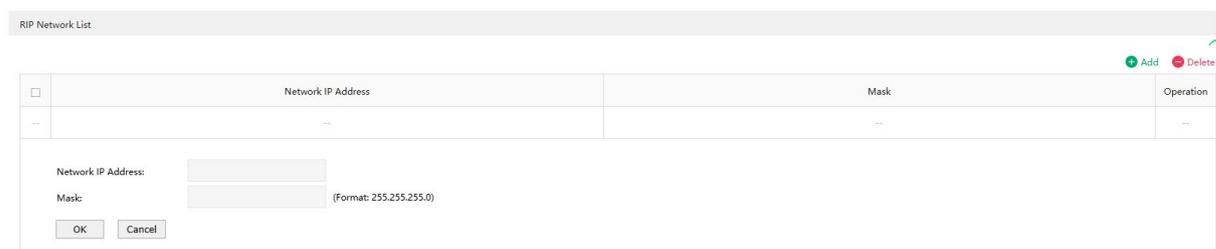
Figure 7-4 Configuring the Global Settings

RIP Enable	
RIP Protocol:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	
Global Config	
RIP Version:	Default 
RIP Distance:	120 (1-255)
Auto Summary:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable 
Update Timer:	30 sec (5-100, default:30)
Timeout Timer:	180 sec (5-300, default:180)
Garbage Timer:	120 sec (5-500, default:120)
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

RIP Version	Choose the global RIP version. Default: send with RIP version 2 and receive with both RIP version 1 and 2. RIPv1: send and receive RIP version 1 formatted packets via broadcast. RIPv2: send and receive RIP version 2 packets using multicast.
RIP Distance	Specify RIP route distance. When more than two protocols have routes to the same destination, only the route which have smallest distance will be inserted to IP routing table. The valid value ranges from 1 to 255 and the default is 120.
Auto Summary	Summarize entries to their main class boundary.
Update Timer	The timer interval to generate a complete response to every neighboring gateway..
Timeout Timer	Upon expiration of the timeout, the route is no longer valid and set to unreachable.
Garbage Timer	Upon expiration of the garbage-collection timer, the route is finally removed from the tables.

3) In the **RIP Network List** section, click **Add** to add the network to enable RIP protocol, so the interface in the network would enable RIP protocol.

Figure 7-5 Configuring the RIP Network List



Network IP Address	Enter the IP address of the network.
Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the network.

4) In the **Interface Config** section, click the edit button to configure the RIP parameters of the interface.

Figure 7-6 Configuring the Interface



IP Address	The interface IP address. You can't change it here.
Status	The interface RIP status(up or down) is decided by the network status. You can't change it here.
Send Version	Select the version of RIP control packets the interface should send from the pulldown menu. RIPv1: Send RIP version 1 formatted packets via broadcast. RIPv2: Send RIP version 2 packets using multicast.
Receive Version	Select what RIP control packets the interface will accept from the pulldown menu. RIPv1: Accept only RIP version 1 formatted packets. RIPv2: Accept only RIP version 2 formatted packets. Both: Accept both RIP version 1 and RIP version 2 formatted packets.
Split Horizon Mode	Choose the Split Horizon Mode. None: No special processing for this case. Split-horizon: A route will not be included in updates sent to the gateway from which it was learned. Poison Reverse: A route will be included in updates sent to the gateway from which it was learned, but the metric will be set to infinity.
Authen Mode	Select an authentication type. None: This is the initial interface state. If you select this option from the pulldown menu no authentication protocols will be run. Simple: If you select 'Simple' you will be prompted to enter an authentication key. This key will be included, in the clear, in the RIP header of all packets sent on the network. All gateways on the network must be configured with the same key. MD5: If you select 'MD5' you will be prompted to enter both an authentication key and an authentication ID. All gateways on the network must be configured with the same key and ID.
Key ID	Enter the RIP Authentication Key ID for the specified interface. If you choose not to use authentication or to use 'simple' you will not be prompted to enter the key ID.
Key	Enter the RIP Authentication Key for the specified interface. If you do not choose to use authentication you will not be prompted to enter a key. If you choose 'simple' or 'MD5' the key may be up to 16 octets long.

7.5 Configuring OSPF

OSPF (Open Shortest Path First) is an Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP) used to make routing decisions in a single autonomous system (AS).

Choose the menu **Transmission > Routing > OSPF**.

- 1) Check the box to enable the **OSPF** function, and set the **Router ID** to Auto or Manual.
- 2) In the **OSPF Config** section to configure the following parameters, then click **Save**.

Figure 7-7 Configuring the OSPF

The screenshot shows two configuration panels for OSPF. The top panel, 'OSPF Global Config', has a 'Status' section with a checked 'Enable' checkbox and a 'Router ID' dropdown menu set to 'Auto'. Below this is a 'Save' button. The bottom panel, 'OSPF Config', contains several parameters: 'Distance' is a text input field with '100' and a range '(0-255)'; 'RFC 1583 Compatibility' has radio buttons for 'Enable' and 'Disable', with 'Disable' selected; 'SPF Delay Time' is a text input field with '5000' and a range 'msec (0-600000)'; 'SPF Hold Init Time' is a text input field with '10000' and a range 'msec (0-600000)'; 'SPF Hold Max Time' is a text input field with '10000' and a range 'msec (0-600000)'; 'Maximum Paths' is a text input field with '16' and a range '(1-16)'; and 'Passive Default' has radio buttons for 'Enable' and 'Disable', with 'Disable' selected. A 'Save' button is at the bottom of this panel.

Distance	Specify OSPF route distance. When more than two protocols have routes to the same destination, only the route which have smallest distance will be inserted to IP routing table. The valid value ranges from 0 to 255 and the default is 100.
RFC 1583 Compatibility	Select the preference rules that will be used when choosing among multiple AS-external LSAs advertising the same destination. If you select Enable, the preference rules will be those defined by RFC 1583. Else the preference rules will be those defined in RFC 2328, which will prevent routing loops when AS-external LSAs for the same destination have been originated from different areas. All gateways in the OSPF domain must be configured the same. The default value is 'Disable'.
SPF Delay Time	The number of seconds from when OSPF receives a topology change to the start of the next SPF calculation. The valid value ranges from 0 to 600 000 msec and the default is 5000.
SPF Hold Init Time	Initial hold time (msec) between consecutive SPF calculations. The valid value ranges from 0 to 600000 msec and the default is 10000.
SPF Hold max Time	Maximum hold time (msec). The valid value ranges from 0 to 600000 msec and the default is 10000.
Maximum Paths	Set the number of paths that OSPF can report for a given destination. The valid value ranges from 1 to 16 and the default is 16.
Passive Default	Configure the default passive mode setting for the OSPF interfaces which do not specify the interface passive mode setting. OSPF does not form adjacencies on passive interfaces, due to that the routing updates on passive interfaces would be suppressed. The default value is 'Disable'.

- 3) In the **Network Table** section, click **Add** to add the network to enable OSPF protocol, so the interface in the network would enable OSPF protocol.

Figure 7-8 Configuring the Network Table

IP Address Enter the IP address of the network.

Wildcard Mask Enter the wildcard mask of the network. Normal subnet mask is also supported.

Area ID The 32 bit unsigned integer that uniquely identifies the area to which a gateway interface connects. If you assign an Area ID which does not exist, the area will be created with default values. It can be in decimal format or dotted decimal format.

- 4) In the **Interface Config** section, click the edit button to configure the OSPF parameters of the interface.

Figure 7-9 Configuring the Interface

Interface The interface for which data is to be displayed or configured.

IP Address/Mask The IP address and subnet mask of the interface.

Gateway Priority The gateway priority for the selected interface. The priority of an interface is specified as an integer from 0 to 255. A value of '0' indicates that the gateway is not eligible to become the designated gateway on this network. The default is 1.

Hello Interval The hello interval for the specified interface in seconds. This parameter must be the same for all gateways attached to a network. The valid value ranges from 1 to 65535 seconds and the default is 10 seconds.

Dead Interval	The dead interval for the specified interface in seconds. This specifies how long a gateway will wait to see a neighbor gateway's Hello packets before declaring that the gateway is down. This parameter must be the same for all gateways attached to a network. The valid value ranges from 1 to 65535 seconds and the default is 40.
Transmit Delay	The Transit Delay for the specified interface. This specifies the estimated number of seconds it takes to transmit a link state update packet over the selected interface. The valid value ranges from 1 to 65535 seconds and the default is 1 second.
Cost	The link cost. OSPF uses this value in computing shortest paths. The valid value ranges from 1 to 65535.
Network Type	The OSPF network type on the interface. The default network type for Ethernet interfaces is broadcast.
Passive Mode	Make an interface passive to prevent OSPF from forming an adjacency on an interface. The routing updates on passive interface would be suppressed. Interfaces are not passive by default.
MTU Ignore	Disables OSPF MTU mismatch detection on received database description packets. Default value is Disable(MTU mismatch detection is enabled).
Authentication Type	Displays the authentication type of the interface. One of the following: none: No authentication. simple: Use simple password. md5: Use md5 message-digest algorithm.
Simple Key	Displays the key used for simple authentication.
MD5 Key ID	Displays the key ID used for md5 authentication.

5) View the **Neighbor Table**.

Figure 7-10 Viewing the Neighbor Table

Neighbor Table Refresh									
Interface	Neighbor IP Address	Router ID	Area ID	Options	Router Priority	State	Events	Retransmission Queue length	Dead Time
--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Interface	Displays the interface for which neighbor list is to be displayed.
Neighbor IP Address	The IP address of the neighboring gateway's interface to the attached network.
Gateway ID	A 32 bit integer in dotted decimal format representing the neighbor.
Area ID	The area ID of the OSPF area associated with the interface.
Gateway Priority	The gateway priority of the neighbor.

Options	An integer value that indicates the optional OSPF capabilities supported by the neighbor. The neighbor's optional OSPF capabilities are also listed in its Hello packets.
State	<p>he state of the neighbor.</p> <p>Down: This is the initial state of a neighbor conversation. It indicates that there has been no recent information received from the neighbor. On NBMA networks, Hello packets may still be sent to 'Down' neighbors, although at a reduced frequency.</p> <p>Attempt: This state is only valid for neighbors attached to NBMA networks. It indicates that no recent information has been received from the neighbor, but that a more concerted effort should be made to contact the neighbor. This is done by sending the neighbor Hello packets at intervals of Hello Interval.</p> <p>Init: In this state, a Hello packet has recently been seen from the neighbor. However, bidirectional communication has not yet been established with the neighbor (i.e., the gateway itself did not appear in the neighbor's Hello packet). All neighbors in this state (or greater) are listed in the Hello packets sent from the associated interface.</p> <p>2-Way: In this state, communication between the two gateways is bidirectional. This has been assured by the operation of the Hello Protocol. This is the most advanced state short of beginning adjacency establishment. The (Backup) Designated Gateway is selected from the set of neighbors in state 2-Way or greater.</p> <p>ExStart: This is the first step in creating an adjacency between the two neighboring gateways. The goal of this step is to decide which gateway is the master, and to decide upon the initial DD sequence number. Neighbor conversations in this state or greater are called adjacencies.</p> <p>Exchange: In this state the gateway is describing its entire link state database by sending Database Description packets to the neighbor. In this state, Link State Request Packets may also be sent asking for the neighbor's more recent LSAs. All adjacencies in Exchange state or greater are used by the flooding procedure. These adjacencies are fully capable of transmitting and receiving all types of OSPF routing protocol packets.</p> <p>Loading: In this state, Link State Request packets are sent to the neighbor asking for the more recent LSAs that have been discovered (but not yet received) in the Exchange state.</p> <p>Full: In this state, the neighboring gateways are fully adjacent. These adjacencies will now appear in Gateway LSAs and Network LSAs.</p>
Events	The number of times this neighbor relationship has changed state, or an error has occurred.
Retransmission Queue length	An integer representing the current length of the retransmission queue of the specified neighbor gateway ID of the specified interface.
Dead Time	The amount of time, in seconds, to wait before the gateway assumes the neighbor is unreachable.

6) View the **Link State Database**

Figure 7-11 Viewing the Link State Database

Link State Database Refresh							
Area ID	Advertising Router	LSA Type	Link State ID	Age	Sequence	Checksum	Options
--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Area ID	Displays the ID of the area to which the LSA belongs.
----------------	---

Advertising Gateway	Displays the ID of the gateway that advertising the LSA.
----------------------------	--

LSA Type	The format and function of the link state advertisement. One of the following: Gateway, Network, Network-Summary, ASBR-Summary, External (Type 5), NSSA-External (Type 7).
-----------------	--

Link State ID	The Link State ID identifies the piece of the routing domain that is being described by the advertisement. The value of the LS ID depends on the advertisement's LS type.
----------------------	---

Age	The time since the link state advertisement was first originated, in seconds.
------------	---

Sequence	The sequence number field is a signed 32-bit integer. It is used to detect old and duplicate link state advertisements. The larger the sequence number, the more recent the advertisement.
-----------------	--

Checksum	The checksum is used to detect data corruption of an advertisement. This corruption can occur while an advertisement is being flooded, or while it is being held in a gateway's memory. This field is the checksum of the complete contents of the advertisement, except the LS age field.
-----------------	--

Options	The Options field in the link state advertisement header indicates which optional capabilities are associated with the advertisement.
----------------	---

Part 11

Configuring Firewall

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. Anti ARP Spoofing Configuration
3. Attack Defense Configuration
4. MAC Filtering Configuration
5. Access Control Configuration
6. Configuring Application Control

1 Overview

1.1 Overview

Firewall is used to enhance the network security. It can prevent external network threats from spreading to the internal network, protect the internal hosts from ARP attacks, and control the internal users' access to the external network.

1.2 Supported Features

The Firewall module supports four functions: Anti ARP Spoofing, Attack Defense, and Access Control.

Anti ARP Spoofing

ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) is used to map IP addresses to the corresponding MAC addresses so that packets can be delivered to their destinations. However, since ARP is implemented with the premise that all the hosts and gateways are trusted, there are high security risks on real, complex networks. If attackers send ARP spoofing packets with false IP address-to-MAC address mapping entries, the device will update the ARP table based on the false ARP packets and record wrong mapping entries, which results in a breakdown of normal communication.

Anti ARP Spoofing can protect the network from ARP spoofing attacks. It works based on the IP-MAC Binding entries. These entries record the correct one-to-one relationships between IP addresses and MAC addresses. When receiving an ARP packet, the gateway checks whether it matches any of the IP-MAC Binding entries. If not, the gateway will ignore the ARP packets. In this way, the gateway maintains the correct ARP table.

In addition, the gateway provides the following two sub functions:

- Permitting the packets matching the IP-MAC Binding entries only and discarding other packets.
- Sending GARP packets to the hosts when it detects ARP attacks. The GARP packets can inform hosts of the correct ARP table, preventing their ARP tables from being falsified by ARP spoofing packets.

Attack Defense

Attacks on a network device can cause device or network paralysis. With the Attack Defense feature, the gateway can identify and discard various attack packets which are sent to the CPU, and limit the packet receiving rate. In this way, the gateway can protect itself and the connected network against malicious attacks.

The gateway provides two types of Attack Defense: Flood Defense and Packet Anomaly Defense. Flood Defense limits the receiving rate of the specific types of packets, and Packet Anomaly Defense discards the illegal packets directly.

MAC Filtering

MAC Filtering can drop or allow packets from certain devices passing through the gateway based on the MAC address of the devices. After the MAC filtering policy and MAC filtering list are configured, the gateway will apply the filter policy to the packets matching the MAC address, and thus limit network traffic and manage network access behaviors.

Access Control

Access Control can filter the packets passing through the gateway based on the Access Control rules. An Access Control rule includes a filter policy and some conditions, such as service type, receiving interface and effective time. The gateway will apply the filter policy to the packets matching these conditions, and thus to limit network traffic, manage network access behaviors and more.

Access Control can prevent various network attacks, such as attacks on TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) and ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol) packets, and can also manage network access behaviors, such as controlling access to the internet.

Application Control

DPI (Deep Packet Inspection) helps you identify, analyze, and control the traffic at the application layer in the network. DPI engine includes the latest application identification signatures to track which applications are using the most bandwidth. You can better manage and distribute network traffic usage through DPI.

2 Anti ARP Spoofing Configuration

To complete the Anti ARP Spoofing configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Add IP-MAC Binding Entries
- 2) Enable Anti ARP Spoofing

 **Note:**

In case Anti ARP Spoofing causes access problems to the currently connected devices, we recommend that you add and verify the IP-MAC Binding entries first before enabling Anti ARP Spoofing.

2.1 Add IP-MAC Binding Entries

You can add IP-MAC Binding entries in two ways: manually and via ARP scanning.

- **Adding IP-MAC Binding Entries Manually**

You can manually bind the IP address, MAC address and interface together on the condition that you have got the related information of the hosts on the network.

- **Adding IP-MAC Binding Entries via ARP Scanning**

With ARP Scanning, the gateway sends the ARP request packets with the specific IP field to the hosts. Upon receiving the ARP reply packet, the gateway can get the IP address, MAC address and connected interface of the host.

The following sections introduce these two methods in detail.

Adding IP-MAC Binding Entries Manually

Before adding entries manually, get the IP addresses and MAC addresses of the hosts on the network and make sure of their accuracy.

Choose the menu **Firewall > Anti ARP Spoofing > IP-MAC Binding** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 IP-MAC Binding Page

The screenshot shows the configuration page for IP-MAC Binding. In the 'General' section, the 'Enable ARP Spoofing Defense' checkbox is checked. Below it, there are two unchecked checkboxes: 'Permit the packets matching the IP-MAC Binding entries only' and 'Send GARP packets when ARP attack is detected'. The 'Interface' is set to 'LAN' and the 'Interval' is set to '1000 ms'. A 'Save' button is located below these settings. The 'IP-MAC Binding List' section contains a table with the following columns: ID, IP Address, MAC Address, Interface, Description, Status, and Operation. The table is currently empty. In the top right corner of the table area, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons.

Follow the steps below to add IP-MAC Binding entries manually. The entries will take effect on the LAN interface.

3) In the **IP-MAC Binding List** section, click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 Add IP-MAC Binding Entries Manually

The screenshot shows the 'Add IP-MAC Binding Entries Manually' dialog box. It has a table at the top with columns: ID, IP Address, MAC Address, Interface, Description, Status, and Operation. Below the table are input fields for 'IP Address', 'MAC Address', 'Interface' (set to 'LAN'), and 'Description' (with a note '(Optional: 0-50 characters)'). There are two checked checkboxes: 'Export to DHCP Address Reservation' and 'Status'. At the bottom, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

4) Configure the following parameters on this page.

IP Address	Enter an IP address to be bound.
MAC Address	Enter a MAC address to be bound.
Interface	Select the interface on which the entries will take effect.
Description	Enter a description for identification.
Export to DHCP Address Reservation	Whether to export the IP-MAC binding list to address reservation list.

Status

Enable this entry. Only when the status is Enable will this entry be effective.

- Click **OK** and the added entry will be displayed in the list.

Adding IP-MAC Binding Entries via ARP Scanning

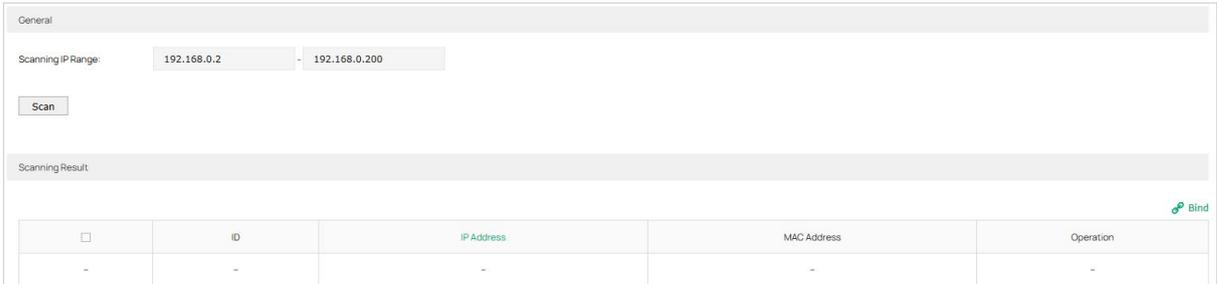
If you want to get the IP addresses and MAC addresses of the hosts quickly, you can use ARP Scanning to facilitate your operation.

Note:

Before using this feature, make sure that your network is safe and the hosts are not suffering from ARP attacks at present; otherwise, you may obtain incorrect IP-MAC Binding entries. If your network is being attacked, it's recommended to bind the entries manually.

Choose the menu **Firewall > Anti ARP Spoofing > ARP Scanning** to load the following page.

Figure 2-3 Add IP-MAC Binding Entries via ARP Scanning



General				
Scanning IP Range:	192.168.0.2 - 192.168.0.200			
<input type="button" value="Scan"/>				
Scanning Result				
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	IP Address	MAC Address	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

Follow the steps below to add IP-MAC Binding entries via ARP Scanning.

- Click **Scan** and the following window will pop up.

Figure 2-4 ARP Scanning Process



- Wait for a moment without any operation. The scanning result will be displayed in the following table. Click  to export the corresponding entry to the IP-MAC Binding table, or select multiple entries and click  Bind to export the entries to the IP-MAC Binding table in batch.

Figure 2-5 ARP Scanning Result

Scanning Result				
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	IP Address	MAC Address	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	192.168.0.100	00-0A-EB-13-A2-3D	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	192.168.0.200	00-19-66-35-E1-B0	
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	192.168.0.73	00-0A-EB-00-13-01	
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	192.168.0.37	00-0A-EB-03-12-A4	

Also, you can go to **Firewall > Anti ARP Spoofing > ARP List** to view and bind the ARP Scanning entries. The ARP Scanning list displays all the historical scanned entries. Click to export the corresponding entry to the IP-MAC Binding table, or select multiple entries and click to export the entries to the IP-MAC Binding table in batch.

Figure 2-6 ARP List

ARP List					
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	IP Address	MAC Address	Interface	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	192.168.188.100	20-25-51-CD-84-40	LAN	

2.2 Enable Anti ARP Spoofing

Choose the menu **Firewall > Anti ARP Spoofing > IP-MAC Binding** to load the following page.

Figure 2-7 IP-MAC Binding-General Config

General

Enable ARP Spoofing Defense

Permit the packets matching the IP-MAC Binding entries only

Send GARP packets when ARP attack is detected

Interface:

Interval: ms

IP-MAC Binding List

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	IP Address	MAC Address	Interface	Description	Status	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Follow the steps below to configure Anti ARP Spoofing rule:

- 1) In the **General** section, enable ARP Spoofing Defense globally. With this option enabled, the gateway can protect its ARP table from being falsified by ARP spoofing packets.
- 2) Choose whether to enable the two sub functions.

Permit the packets matching the IP-MAC Binding entries only	With this option enabled, when receiving a packet, the gateway will check whether the IP address, MAC address and receiving interface match any of the IP-MAC Binding entries. Only the matched packets will be forwarded.
Send GARP packets when ARP attack is detected	With this option enabled, the gateway will send GARP packets to the hosts if it detects ARP spoofing packets on the network. The GARP packets will inform the hosts of the correct ARP information, which is used to replace the wrong ARP information in the hosts.
Interval	If the Send GARP packets when ARP attack is detected is enabled, configure the time interval for sending GARP packets. The valid values are from 1 to 10000 milliseconds.

3) Click **Save**.

 **Note:**

Before enabling "Permit the packets matching the IP-MAC Binding entries only", you should make sure that your management host is in the IP-MAC Binding list. Otherwise, you cannot log in to the Web management page of the gateway. If this happens, restore your gateway to factory defaults and then log in using the default login credentials.

3 Attack Defense Configuration

Choose the menu **Firewall > Attack Defense > Attack Defense** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Attack Defense

Flood Defense

<input type="checkbox"/>	Multi-connections TCP SYN Flood	10000	Pkt/s (100-99999)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Multi-connections UDP Flood	12000	Pkt/s (100-99999)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Multi-connections ICMP Flood	1500	Pkt/s (100-99999)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Stationary source TCP SYN Flood	4000	Pkt/s (100-99999)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Stationary source UDP Flood	6000	Pkt/s (100-99999)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Stationary source ICMP Flood	600	Pkt/s (100-99999)

Packet Anomaly Defense

- Block TCP Scan (Stealth FIN/Xmas/Null)
- Block TCP Scan with RST
- Block Ping of Death
- Block Large Ping
 - 4028 (28-65535) bytes
- Block Ping from WAN
- Block ICMP Timestamp Request Remote Date Disclosure
- Block WinNuke attack
- Block TCP packets with SYN and FIN Bits set
- Block TCP packets with FIN Bit set but no ACK Bit set
- Block packets with specified IP options
 - Security Option
 - Record Route Option
 - Stream Option
 - Timestamp Option
 - No Operation Option

Save

Follow the steps below to configure Attack Defense.

- 1) In the **Flood Defense** section, check the box and configure the corresponding parameters to enable your desired feature. By default, all the options are disabled. For details, refer to the following table:

Multi-connections TCP SYN Flood	With this feature enabled, the gateway will filter the subsequent TCP SYN packets if the number of this kind of packets reaches the specified threshold. The valid threshold ranges from 100 to 99999.
Multi-connections UDP Flood	With this feature enabled, the gateway will filter the subsequent UDP packets if the number of this kind of packets reaches the specified threshold. The valid threshold ranges from 100 to 99999.
Multi-connections ICMP Flood	With this feature enabled, the gateway will filter the subsequent ICMP packets if the number of this kind of packets reaches the specified threshold. The valid threshold ranges from 100 to 99999.
Stationary source TCP SYN Flood	With this feature enabled, the gateway will filter the subsequent stationary source TCP SYN packets if the number of this kind of packets reaches the specified threshold. The valid threshold ranges from 100 to 99999.
Stationary source UDP Flood	With this feature enabled, the gateway will filter the subsequent stationary source UDP SYN packets if the number of this kind of packets reaches the specified threshold. The valid threshold ranges from 100 to 99999.

Stationary source ICMP Flood	With this feature enabled, the gateway will filter the subsequent stationary source ICMP SYN packets if the number of this kind of packets reaches the specified threshold. The valid threshold ranges from 100 to 99999.
------------------------------	---

- 2) In the **Packet Anomaly Defense** section, directly check the box to enable your desired feature. By default, all the options are enabled. For details, refer to the following table:

Block TCP Scan (Stealth FIN/Xmas/Null)	With this option enabled, the gateway will filter the TCP scan packets of Stealth FIN, Xmas and Null.
Block TCP Scan with RST	With the option enabled, the router will automatically reply a RST packet when it receives TCP SYN packets; with the option disabled, the router will automatically drop the packets and not respond.
Block Ping of Death	With this option enabled, the gateway will block Ping of Death attack. Ping of Death attack means that the attacker sends abnormal ping packets larger than 65535 bytes to cause system crash on the target computer.
Block Large Ping	With this option enabled, the gateway will block Large Ping attacks. Large Ping attack means that the attacker sends multiple ping packets larger than 1500 bytes to cause the system crash on the target computer.
Block Ping from WAN	With this option enabled, the gateway will block the ICMP request from WAN.
Block ICMP Timestamp Request Remote Date Disclosure	With this option enabled, the device will block all ICMP Timestamp (Type 13) packets.
Block WinNuke attack	With this option enabled, the gateway will block WinNuke attacks. WinNuke attack refers to a remote denial-of-service attack (DoS) that affects some Windows operating systems, such as the Windows 95 and Windows N. The attacker sends a string of OOB (Out of Band) data to the target computer on TCP port 137, 138 or 139, causing system crash or Blue Screen of Death.
Block TCP packets with SYN and FIN Bits set	With this option enabled, the gateway will filter the TCP packets with both SYN Bit and FIN Bit set.
Block TCP packets with FIN Bit set but no ACK Bit set	With this option enabled, the gateway will filter the TCP packets with FIN Bit set but without ACK Bit set.
Block packets with specified IP options	With this option enabled, the gateway will filter the packets with specified IP options. You can choose the options according to your needs.

- 3) Click **Save** to save the settings.

4 MAC Filtering Configuration

MAC Filtering can drop or allow packets from certain devices passing through the gateway based on the MAC address of the devices. After the MAC filtering policy and MAC filtering list are configured, the gateway will apply the filter policy to the packets matching the MAC address, and thus limit network traffic and manage network access behaviors.

Choose the menu **Firewall > MAC Filtering > MAC Filtering** to load the following page.

Figure 4-1 MAC Filtering

General

Enable MAC Filtering

Allow packets with the MAC addresses listed below and deny the rest

Deny packets with the MAC addresses listed below and allow the rest

Direction: ALL

Save

MAC Filtering Deny List

	ID	Name	MAC Address	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	-	-	-	-

Follow the steps below to configure MAC Filtering.

- 1) In the **General** section, check the box to enable the MAC Filtering feature, configure the corresponding parameters and click **Save**.

Allow packets with the MAC addresses listed below and deny the rest

Select to allow packets with the listed MAC address to pass through the gateway, and packets with other MAC addresses will be dropped.

Deny packets with the MAC addresses listed below and allow the rest

Select to drop packets with the listed MAC address, and the packets with other MAC addresses will be allowed to pass through the gateway.

Direction

Select All when you want to apply the policy to traffic both from LAN to LAN and from LAN to WAN. Select LAN -> WAN when you want to apply the policy only to traffic from LAN to WAN.

- 2) In the **MAC Filtering List** section, click Add to load the following page.

Figure 4-2 MAC Filtering

MAC Filtering Deny List

	ID	Name	MAC Address	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	-	-	-	-

Name: (1-50 characters)

MAC Address:

OK Cancel

- 3) Specify the MAC name and address and click **OK**.

MAC Address

Specify the MAC address of the device, and the MAC filtering policy will be applied to traffic with the MAC address.

5 Access Control Configuration

Choose the menu **Firewall > Access Control > Access Control** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-1 Access Control

Access Control List									
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	Policy	Service Type	Direction	Source	Destination	Effective Time	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

This table displays the Access Control entries. Follow the steps below to add a new Access Control entry.

- 1) Click **Add** and the following page will appear.

Figure 5-2 Access Control

Access Control List									
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	Policy	Service Type	Direction	Source	Destination	Effective Time	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Name:	<input type="text" value=""/>	(1-50 characters)
Policy:	---	
Service Type:	ALL	
IP Type:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IPv4 <input type="radio"/> IPv6	
Direction:	---	
Source Type:	IP Group	
Source:	---	
Destination Type:	IP Group	
Destination:	---	
Effective Time:	---	
States:	---	
ID:	<input type="text" value=""/>	(Optional)

OK Cancel

- 2) Configure the required parameters and click **OK**:

Name	Specify a name for the rule. It can be 50 characters at most. The name of each entry cannot be repeated.
Policy	Select whether to block or allow the packets matching the rule to access the network.
Service Type	Select the effective service for the rule. The service referenced here can be created on the Preferences > Service Type page.
Direction	Select the effective traffic direction for the rule.
Source	Select an IP group to specify the source address range for the rule. The IP group referenced here can be created on the Preferences > IP Group page.
Destination	Select an IP group to specify the destination address range for the rule. The IP group referenced here can be created on the Preferences > IP Group page.

Effective Time	Select the effective time for the rule. The effective time referenced here can be created on the Preferences > Time Range page.
ID	Specify a rule ID. A smaller ID means a higher priority. This value is optional, and the newly added rule without this value configured will get the largest ID among all rules, which means the newly added rule has the lowest priority.

6 Configuring Application Control

To complete the application control configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Create **Rules**. By adding a rule, you can predefine an application control policy that can be referenced to block specific applications or configure QoS for them.
- 2) Add **Application Filter**. By adding an Application Filter, you can predefine an application filtering policy that can be referenced.
- 3) Enable **Deep Packet Inspection** and **Assign Restriction**.

6.1 Create Rules

Choose the menu **Firewall > Application Control > Rules**, click **Add** to load the following page.

Rules Name Specify a name for the rule.

Schedule Select the time range you set for the rule to take effect.

QoS Choose whether to enable QoS or not. If you enable QoS, select the QoS Class.

Select Apps Select the applications to which the rule will be applied. You can view the full application list on the **Firewall > Application Control > Application List** page.

6.2 Add Application Filter

Choose the menu **Firewall > Application Control > Application Filter**, click **Add** to load the following page.

Filter Name	Specify a name for the filter.
Description	Describes what the filter is for.
Block Rules	Select the predefined rules.

6.3 Enable Deep Packet Inspection

Choose the menu **Firewall > Application Control > DPI Settings** to load the following page.

Enable **Deep Packet Inspection**, and click **Save**. If **Log Switch** is enabled at the same time, the results of traffic analysis will be counted and retained. You can view the statistics in **Status > Traffic Statistics > DPI Statistics**. Click **Add** to assign restriction.

Network	Select the LAN network that the restriction takes effect.
Filter	Select the filter applied to the restriction.

Click **OK** to apply the settings.

6.4 View Application List

Application List displays the information of all the applications that can be identified

Choose the menu **Firewall > Application Control > Application List** to load the following page. In Application List, click in the Operation column to view the details of an application

including its name, ID, category, and description. You can quickly search for the desired application by name or category.

Application List				
Search Name		Category: ---		
ID	Name	Category	Operation	
0	unknown	Generic		
1	Facebook	Social		
2	magicJack	Voice over IP		
3	iTunes	Streaming		
4	MySpace	Social		
5	FaceTime	Voice over IP		
6	Truphone	Voice over IP		
7	Twitter	Social		
8	XBOX gaming console	Gaming		
9	RealMedia	Streaming		
10	Google Mail	Mail		
11	Goobar	Voice over IP		
12	iCloud	Filetransfer		
13	Ubuntu One	Filetransfer		
14	Dropbox	Filetransfer		
15	Yuilop	Messaging		
16	iMessage	Messaging		
17	GoToMyPC	Remote Control		
18	GoToMeeting	Conference		
19	Windows Azure	Filetransfer		
20	Amazon Cloud	Cloud and CDN Services		
21	Dailymotion	Streaming		
22	Deezer	Audio Entertainment		
23	Grooveshark	Streaming		
24	SUDA Phone	Voice over IP		
25	Office 365	Business		
26	CNTV	Streaming		
27	SINATV	Streaming		
28	YouTube	Streaming		
29	VoipSwitch	Voice over IP		
30	Zynga	Gaming		
31	Crime City	Gaming		
32	Modern War	Gaming		
33	Vippie	Voice over IP		
34	Box	Filetransfer		
35	Skydrive	Filetransfer		
36	Adobe Creative Cloud	Filetransfer		
37	LinkedIn	Social		
38	Orkut	Social		
39	hi5	Social		
40	Scribada	Streaming		
41	Zoho Work Online	Business		
42	Hotmail	Mail		
43	Instagram	Social		
44	SugarSync	Filetransfer		
45	Wickr	Messaging		
46	TigerText	Messaging		
47	Vibe	Messaging		
48	enLeigon	Messaging		
49	Voxer	Messaging		

Part 12

Configuring Behavior Control

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. Web Filtering Configuration
3. Web Security Configuration

1 Overview

1.1 Overview

With the Behavior Control feature, you can control the online behavior of local hosts. You can block specific hosts' access to specific websites using URLs or keywords, block HTTP posts and prevent certain types of files from being downloaded from the internet.

1.2 Supported Features

The Behavior Control module supports two features: Web Filtering and Web Security.

Web Filtering

Web Filtering is used to filter specific websites. The gateway provides two ways to filter websites: Web Group Filtering and URL Filtering.

- **Web Group Filtering:** You can configure multiple websites as a web group, and set a filtering rule for the group. More than one group can be created and several groups can share a same filtering rule.
- **URL Filtering:** You can directly set a filtering rule for specific entire URLs or keywords.

Web Security

Web Security is used to control the specific online behaviors of local users. You can configure this feature to block HTTP post, which means that the local users cannot log in, submit comments or perform any other operation which needs HTTP post. Also, you can prohibit local users from downloading specific types of files from the internet.

2 Web Filtering Configuration

In Behavior Control module, you can configure the following features:

- Web Group Filtering
- URL Filtering

2.1 Configure Web Group Filtering

To configure Web Group Filtering, add one or more web groups first, and then add web group filtering entries using the created groups.

2.1.1 Add Web Groups

Choose the menu **Behavior Control > Web Filtering > Web Group** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Web Group Page

The screenshot shows the 'Web Group List' configuration page. At the top right, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Name, Member, Description, and Operation. The table contains one row with dashes in all cells. Below the table is a form with the following fields and buttons:

- Name:** A text input field with a character count '(1-28 characters)'. Below it is a 'Clear' button.
- Member:** A large text area. Below it is a note: '(Use the Enter key, Space key, ";" or ":" to divide different websites.)'.
- File Path:** A text input field with a 'Browse' button and a note: '(Optional. TXT file is required)'. Below it is an 'Import' button and a note: 'Import web list file.'.
- Description:** A text input field with a note: '(Optional)'. Below it are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Configure the following parameters and click **OK**.

Name	Specify a name for the group. The name of each group cannot be repeated.
Member	Add one or more website members to the group. The format of the website members is "www.tp-link.com" or "*.tp-link.com", in which "*" is a wildcard. Use Enter key, Space key, ";" or ":" to divide different websites.
File Path	Import member list in your TXT file from your host. The format is "www.tp-link.com" or "*.tp-link.com", in which "*" is a wildcard. Use Enter key, Space key, ";" or ":" to divide different websites.
Description	Enter a brief description for the group.

2.1.2 Add Web Group Filtering Entries

Before configuring web group entries, go to the **Preferences** module to configure the IP Group and Effective Time according to your needs.

Choose the menu **Behavior Control > Web Filtering > Web Group Filtering** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 Web Group Filtering Page

Follow the steps below to add Web group filtering entries:

1) In the **Web Filtering List** section, configure the required parameters and click **OK**.

IP Group	Select an IP group for the rule. The IP group referenced here can be created on the Preferences > IP Group page.
Policy	Choose to allow or block the websites that are in the selected web group(s).
Web Group	Select one or more web groups. The web group referenced here can be created on the Behavior Control > Web Filtering > Web Group page.
Effective Time	Select the effective time. The effective time referenced here can be created on the Preferences > Time Range page.
Description	Enter a brief description for the group.
ID	Specify a rule ID. A smaller ID means a higher priority. This value is optional. A newly added rule with this field left blank will get the largest ID among all rules, which means that the newly added rule has the lowest priority.
Status	Check the box to enable the rule.

2) In the **General** section, enable Web Filtering. Click **Save**.

2.2 Configuring URL Filtering

Before configuring URL Filtering, go to the **Preferences** module to configure the IP Group and Effective Time according to your needs.

Choose the menu **Behavior Control > Web Filtering > URL Filtering** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-3 URL Filtering Page

Follow the steps below to configure URL filtering:

- 1) In the URL Filtering List section, click **Add** and configure the required parameters. Click **OK**.

Source Type	<p>Select the source of the packets to which this rule applies.</p> <p>IP Group: With IP Group selected, choose the IP Group you have created from the drop-down list below. The gateway will examine whether the source IP address of the packet is in the IP Group. If no IP groups have been created, go to Preferences > IP Group to create one.</p> <p>Network: With network selected, choose the network you have created from the drop-down list below. The gateway will filter the packets sourced from the selected network. If no networks have been created, you can select the default network (LAN), or go to Network > LAN to create one.</p> <p>SSID: With SSID selected, choose the SSID you have created from the drop-down list below. The gateway will filter the packets sources from the selected SSID. If no SSIDs have been created, you can go to Wireless > Wireless Settings to create one.</p>
Policy	<p>Choose whether to allow or block access to the URLs which match the filtering content. You configure different policies as needed.</p>
Mode	<p>Select the filtering mode.</p> <p>URL Category: Frequently used URLs such as news, entertainment, and shopping are divided into different categories. This mode is suitable for most common scenarios, but if you find that the required URLs are not in the filtering category, you can add the specific URLs in the custom URL mode.</p> <p>Custom URLs: Manually enter the URL you want to filter. This mode lets you precisely control content access.</p>
Content Filter	<p>When the URL Category mode is selected, select a preset scenario</p>
Filter Way	<p>When the Custom URLs mode is selected, choose a mode for the filtering content to match the URL.</p> <p>Keywords: If a URL contains any of the keywords specified in the filtering content, the filtering rule will be applied to this URL.</p> <p>URL Path: If a URL is the same as any of the entire URL rules specified in the filtering content, the filtering rule will be applied to this URL.</p>
Filtering Content	<p>When the Custom URLs mode is selected, add the filtering content. Use the Enter key, Space key, "," or ";" to divide different entries of the filtering content. "." means that this rule will be applied to any URL. For example, if you want to allow URL A and deny other URLs, you can add an Allow rule with the filtering content "A" and add a Deny rule with the filtering content ".". Note that the "." rule should have the largest ID number, which means that it has the lowest priority.</p>

File Path	When the Custom URLs mode is selected, you can batch import keywords or URL paths to the Filtering Content box through a txt file. The content format in the txt file should be the same as Filtering Content. A txt file can import up to 200 keywords or URL paths, and each keyword or URL path can contain up to 64 characters.
Effective Time	Select the effective time. The effective time referenced here can be created on the Preferences > Time Range page.
Status	Check the box to enable the rule.
Description	Enter a brief description for the group.
ID	Specify a rule ID. A smaller ID means a higher priority. This value is optional. The newly added rule without this value configured will get the largest ID among all rules, which means that the newly added rule has the lowest priority.

2) In the **General** section, enable the corresponding item. Click **Save**.

URL filtering	Check this option to enable URL filtering, allowing you to manage the access to network based on the preset rules. This helps prevent access to inappropriate or harmful websites, thereby improving network security.
Enable Safe Search	Check this option to enable Safe Search globally. This feature can filter search results to block inappropriate content. It is suitable for family and educational environments.
Enable Block Page	Check this option to enable Block Page. When a user tries to access a blocked URL, the prompt block page will display to tell why access is denied. This can effectively remind users to comply with network usage

3 Web Security Configuration

Before configuring Web Security, go to **Preferences** module to configure the IP Group and Effective Time according to your needs.

Choose the menu **Behavior Control > Web Security > Web Security** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Web Security Page

Follow the steps below to configure Web Security.

- 1) In the **Web Security List** section, configure the following parameters and click **OK** to add a Web Security rule.

IP Group	Select an IP group for the rule. The IP group referenced here can be created on the Preferences > IP Group page.
Block HTTP Post	With this option enabled, HTTP posts will be blocked. The hosts of the selected IP group cannot log in, submit comments or do any operation using HTTP post.
File Suffix	Enter file suffixes to specify the file types. Use Enter key, Space key, ",", ";" or ":" to divide different file suffixes. The hosts of the selected IP group cannot download these types of files from the internet.
Effective Time	Select the effective time. The effective time referenced here can be created on the Preferences > Time Range page.
Description	Enter a brief description for the group.
Status	Check the box to enable the rule.

- 2) In the **General** section, enable Web Security and click **Save**.

Part 13

Configuring VPN

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. IPSec VPN Configuration
3. GRE VPN Configuration
4. L2TP Configuration
5. PPTP Configuration
6. OpenVPN Configuration
7. WireGuard VPN Configuration
8. Users Configuration

1 Overview

1.1 Overview

VPN (Virtual Private Network) provides a means for secure communication between remote computers across a public WAN (Wide Area Network), such as the internet. Virtual indicates the VPN connection is based on the logical end-to-end connection instead of the physical end-to-end connection. Private indicates users can establish the VPN connection according to their requirements and only specific users are allowed to use the VPN connection.

The core of VPN is to realize tunnel communication, which fulfills the task of data encapsulation, data transmission and data decompression via the tunneling protocol. Common tunneling protocols are Layer 2 tunneling protocol and Layer 3 tunneling protocol.

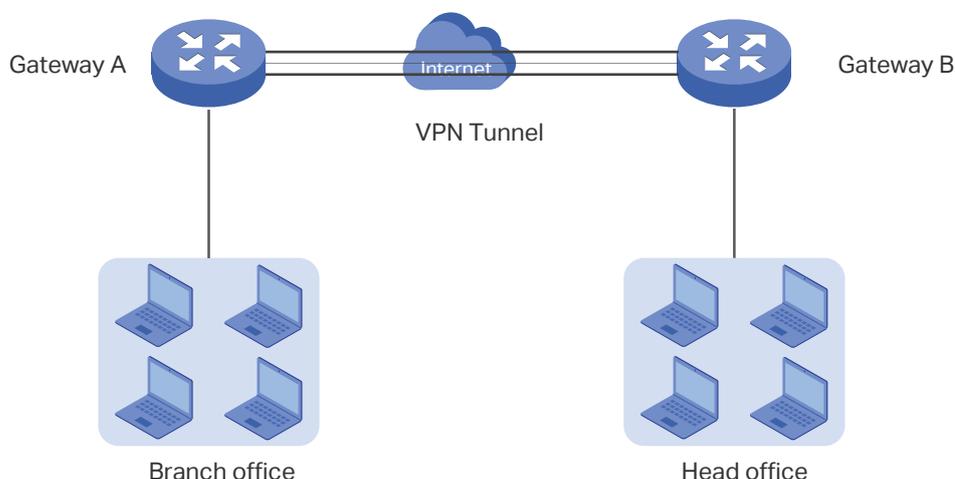
Depending on your network topology, there are two basic application scenarios: LAN-to-LAN VPN and Client-to-LAN VPN.

Depending on your network topology, there are two basic application scenarios: LAN-to-LAN VPN and Client-to-LAN VPN.

■ LAN-to-LAN VPN

In this scenario, different private networks are connected together via the internet. For example, the private networks of the branch office and head office in a company are located at different places. LAN-to-LAN VPN can satisfy the demand that hosts in these private networks need to communicate with each other. The following figure shows the typical network topology in this scenario.

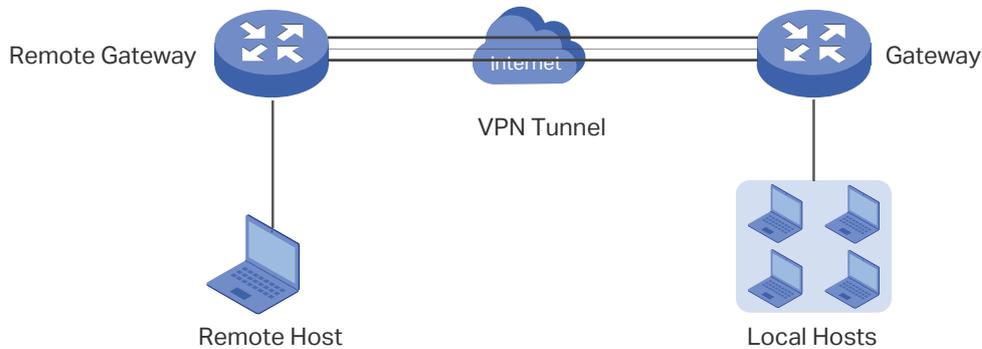
Figure 1-1 LAN-to-LAN VPN



■ Client-to-LAN VPN

In this scenario, the remote host is provided with secure access to the local hosts. For example, an employee on business can access the private network of his company securely. Client-to-LAN VPN can satisfy this demand. The following figure shows the typical network topology in this scenario.

Figure 1-2 Client-to-LAN VPN



1.2 Supported Features

The gateway supports IPsec, L2TP, PPTP and OpenVPN.

IPsec

IPsec (IP Security) can provide security services such as data confidentiality, data integrity and data origin authentication at the IP layer. IPsec uses IKEv1 (Internet Key Exchange version 1) and IKEv2 (Internet Key Exchange version 2) to handle negotiation of protocols and algorithms based on the user-specified policy, and generate the encryption and authentication keys to be used by IPsec. IKEv1/IKEv2 negotiation includes two phases, that is IKEv1/IKEv2 Phase-1 and IKEv1/IKEv2 Phase-2. The basic concepts of IPsec are as follows:

■ Proposal

Proposal is the security suite configured manually to be applied in IPsec IKEv1 negotiation. Specifically speaking, it refers to hash algorithm, symmetric encryption algorithm, asymmetric encryption algorithm applied in IKEv1 Phase-1, and security protocol, hash algorithm, symmetric encryption algorithm applied in IKEv1 Phase-2.

■ Negotiation Mode

The negotiation mode configured for IKEv1 Phase-1 negotiation determines the role that the VPN gateway plays in the negotiation process. You can specify the negotiation mode as responder mode or initiator mode.

Responder Mode: In responder mode, the VPN gateway responds to the requests for IKEv1 negotiation and acts as the VPN server or the responder.

Initiator Mode: In initiator mode, the VPN gateway sends requests for IKEv1 negotiation and acts as the VPN client or the initiator.

- Exchange Mode

The exchange mode determines the way VPN gateways negotiate in IKEv1 Phase-1. You can specify the exchange mode as main mode or aggressive mode.

Main Mode: In main mode, the identification information for authentication is encrypted, thus enhancing security.

Aggressive Mode: In aggressive mode, less packets are exchanged, thus improving speed.

- Authentication ID Type

The authentication ID type determines the type of authentication identifiers applied in IKEv1 Phase-1. It includes the local ID type and the remote ID type. The local ID indicates the authentication identifier sent to the other end, and the remote ID indicates that expected from the other end. You can specify the authentication ID type as IP address or name.

IP Address: The gateway uses the IP address for authentication.

Name: The gateway uses the FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) for authentication.

- Encapsulation Mode

The encapsulation mode determines how packets transferred in the VPN tunnel are encapsulated. You can select tunnel mode or transport mode as the encapsulation mode. For most users, it is recommended to use the tunnel mode.

- PFS

PFS (Perfect Forward Secrecy) determines whether the key generated in IKEv1 Phase-2 is relevant with that in IKEv1 Phase-1. You can specify PFS as none, dh1, dh2, or dh5. None indicates that no PFS is configured, and the key generated in IKEv1 Phase-2 is relevant with that in IKEv1 Phase-1, whereas dh1, dh2, or dh5 means different key exchange groups, which make the key generated in IKEv1 Phase-2 irrelevant with that in IKEv1 Phase-1.

GRE

GRE VPN encapsulates data packets of some network layer protocols, so that they can be transmitted in another network protocol. But GRE cannot encrypt packets, so it is usually used together with IPsec.

L2TP

L2TP (Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol) provides a way for a dial-up user to make a virtual PPP (Point-to-Point Protocol) connection to a VPN server. Because of the lack of confidentiality

inherent in the L2TP protocol, it is often implemented along with IPsec. The basic concepts of L2TP are as follows:

- **IPsec Encryption**

IPsec encryption determines whether the traffic of the tunnel is encrypted with IPsec. You can select encrypted or unencrypted as the IPsec encryption. If encrypted is selected, a pre-shared key needs to be entered, and then the L2TP traffic will be encrypted with a default IPsec configuration. If unencrypted is selected, the VPN tunnel traffic will not be encrypted.

- **Authentication**

L2TP uses an account name and password for authentication on the VPN server. Only legal clients can set up a tunnel with the server, thus enhancing network security.

PPTP

PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) is a network protocol that enables the secure transfer of data from a remote client to a private enterprise server by creating a VPN across TCP/IP-based data networks. PPTP supports on-demand, multi-protocol, virtual private networking over public networks, such as the internet. The basic concepts of PPTP are as follows:

- **MPPE Encryption**

MPPE (Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption) scheme is a means of representing PPP packets in an encrypted form defined in RFC 3078. You can select encrypted or unencrypted as MPPE encryption. If encrypted is selected, the VPN tunnel traffic will be encrypted with RSA RC4 algorithm to ensure data confidentiality. If unencrypted is selected, the VPN tunnel traffic will not be encrypted.

- **Authenticaiton**

PPTP uses an account name and password for authentication on the VPN server. Only legal clients can set up a tunnel with the server, thus enhancing network security.

OpenVPN

OpenVPN uses OpenSSL (Open Secure Sockets Layer) for encryption of UDP and TCP for traffic transmission. OpenVPN uses a client-server connection to provide secure communications between a server and a remote client over the Internet.

WireGuard VPN

Wireguard VPN is a secure, fast and modern VPN protocol. It is based on the UDP protocol and uses modern encryption algorithms to improve work efficiency.

User Account List

This feature enables you to create VPN connection accounts for remote devices to connect to the VPN server. If the gateway acts as the L2TP/PPTP client, you don't need to configure the L2TP/ PPTP user accounts on this page.

2 IPSec VPN Configuration

To complete the IPSec VPN configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Configure the IPSec Policy.
- 2) Verify the connectivity of the IPSec VPN tunnel.

Configuration Guidelines

- For both ends of the VPN tunnel, the Pre-shared key, Proposal, Exchange Mode, and Encapsulation Mode should be identical.
- For both ends of the VPN tunnel, the Remote Gateway, Local/Remote Subnet, Local/Remote ID Type should be matched.

2.1 Configuring the IPSec Policy

2.1.1 Configuring the Basic Parameters

Choose the menu **VPN > IPSec > IPSec Policy** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Configuring the Basic Parameters

The screenshot displays the 'IPSec Policy List' configuration interface. At the top, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Policy Name, Group Name, Mode, Remote Gateway, Local Subnet, Remote Subnet, Primary DNS, Secondary DNS, Status, and Operation. The table currently contains one row with dashes in all cells. Below the table is a configuration form for a new policy. The form includes the following fields and options:

- Policy Name:** Text input field with a character count '(1-32 characters)'. The value is empty.
- Mode:** Dropdown menu with 'LAN-to-LAN' selected.
- Remote Gateway:** Text input field with a character count '(IP Address/Domain Name)'. The value is empty.
- WAN:** Dropdown menu with '---' selected.
- Local Network Type:** Radio buttons for 'Network' (selected) and 'Custom IP'.
- Local Networks:** Text input field with a character count '(---)'. The value is empty.
- Remote Subnet:** Text input field with a character count '(---)'. The value is empty.
- Pre-shared Key:** Text input field with a character count '(1-128 characters)'. The value is empty.
- Status:** Checkboxes for 'Enable' (checked) and 'Disable'.
- Advanced Settings:** Radio button (unchecked).
- Buttons:** 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom.

Follow these steps to configure the basic parameters:

- 1) Specify the name of the IPSec Policy.
- 2) Configure the Network Mode. Select **LAN-to-LAN** when the network is connected to the other network. Select **Client-to-LAN** when a host is connected to the network.

When the **LAN-to-LAN** mode is selected, the following section will appear.

Mode:	LAN-to-LAN	
Remote Gateway:		(IP Address/Domain Name)
WAN:	---	
Local Network Type:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> Custom IP	
Local Networks:	---	
Remote Subnet:		
	<input type="button" value="+ Add"/>	
Pre-shared Key:		(1-128 characters)
Status:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	

Remote Gateway Enter an IP address or a domain name (1 to 255 characters) as the remote gateway. 0.0.0.0 represents any IP address. Only when the negotiation mode is set to Responder Mode can you enter 0.0.0.0.

WAN Specify the WAN port on which the IPSec tunnel is established.

Local Network Type Select the type to set the local network for VPN Policy, there are two types: Network and Custom IP.

Local Networks Select the local networks to apply the VPN Policy. The VPN Policy will only apply to the selected or filled local network. If you set the local network type to Custom IP, enter the IP address and subnet.

Remote Subnet Specify the remote network. It's always the IP address range of LAN on the remote peer of the VPN tunnel. It's formed from the IP address and subnet mask. Only the traffic to the remote subnet will be forwarded through the IPsec tunnel. You can click Add to add multiple remote subnets.

Pre-shared Key Specify the unique pre-shared key for both peers' authentication.

Status Choose to enable the IPSec policy.

Note:

The Local Subnet and Remote Subnet should not be in the same network segment when choosing LAN-to-LAN as the VPN mode.

When the **Client-to-LAN** mode is selected, the following section will appear.

Mode:	Client-to-LAN	
Remote Host:		(IP Address/Domain Name)
WAN:	---	
Local Network Type:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> Custom IP	
Local Networks:	---	
Pre-shared Key:		(1-128 characters)
IP Address Pool:		
Primary DNS:		(Optional)
Secondary DNS:		(Optional)
Status:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	

Remote Host	Enter the IP address of the remote host. 0.0.0.0 represents any IP address.
WAN	Specify the WAN port on which the IPSec tunnel is established.
Local Network Type	Select the type to set the local network for VPN Policy, there are two types: Network and Custom IP.
Local Networks	Select the local networks to apply the VPN Policy. The VPN Policy will only apply to the selected or filled local network. If you set the local network type to Custom IP, enter the IP address and subnet.
Pre-shared Key	Specify the unique pre-shared key for both peers' authentication.
IP Address Pool	Specify the IP address pool from which the IP address will be assigned to the VPN client.
Primary/Secondary DNS	Specify the DNS address to be assigned to the VPN client (eg 8.8.8.8). You can enter the router's LAN IP. When configuring DNS, it is recommended to set one end as responder and the other end as initiator.
Status	Choose to enable the IPSec policy.

3) Click **OK**.

2.1.2 Configuring the Advanced Parameters

Advanced settings include IKEv1/IKEv2 phase-1 settings and IKEv1/IKEv2 phase-2 settings. Phase-1 is used to authenticate both sides of the communication and establish the IKE SA. Phase-2 is used to negotiate about keys and security related parameters, then establish the IPSec SA. It is suggested to keep the default advanced settings. You can complete the configurations according to your actual needs.

■ Configuring the IKE Phase-1 Parameters

Choose the menu **VPN > IPSec > IPSec Policy** and click **Advanced Settings** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 Configuring the IKE Phase-1 Parameters

The screenshot displays the 'Phase-1 Settings' configuration page. It includes the following fields and options:

- IKE Protocol Version:** Radio buttons for IKEv1 and IKEv2 (selected).
- Proposal:** Four rows of dropdown menus for Proposal 1, 2, 3, and 4. Proposal 1 is set to sha1, aes256, dh2. Proposal 2 is set to sha1, 3des, dh2. Proposal 3 is set to sha256, aes256, dh5. Proposal 4 is set to sha256, aes256, dh14.
- Negotiation Mode:** Radio buttons for Initiator Mode (selected) and Responder Mode.
- Local ID Type:** Radio buttons for IP Address (selected) and NAME.
- Local ID:** Text input field with a placeholder and a note '(1-28 non-blank characters)'. The field is currently empty.
- Remote ID Type:** Radio buttons for IP Address (selected) and NAME.
- Remote ID:** Text input field with a placeholder and a note '(1-28 non-blank characters)'. The field is currently empty.
- SA Lifetime:** Text input field set to 28800, with a note 'seconds (60-604800)'.
- DPD:** A checked checkbox labeled 'Enable'.
- DPD Interval:** Text input field set to 10, with a note 'seconds (1-300)'.

In the **Phase-1 Settings** section, configure the IKE phase-1 parameters and click **OK**.

IKE Protocol Version	Select the protocol version, IKEv1 or IKEv2.
Proposal	Select the proposal for IKE negotiation phase 1 to specify the encryption algorithm, authentication algorithm and DH group. Up to four proposals can be selected.
Exchange Mode	If you select the IKEv1 protocol, specify the IKE Exchange Mode as Main Mode or Aggressive Mode. By default, it is Main Mode. Main Mode: Main mode provides identity protection and exchanges more information, which applies to scenarios with higher requirements for identity protection. Aggressive Mode: Aggressive Mode establishes a faster connection but with lower security, which applies to scenarios with lower requirements for identity protection.
Negotiation Mode	Specify the IKE Negotiation Mode as Initiator Mode or Responder Mode. Initiator Mode: The local device initiates a connection to the peer. Responder Mode: The local device responds a connection to the peer.
Local ID Type	Specify the local ID type for IKE negotiation. IP Address: Use an IP address as the ID in IKE negotiation. It is the default type. NAME: Use a name as the ID in IKE negotiation. It refers to FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name).
Local ID	When the Local ID Type is configured as NAME, enter a name for the local device as the ID in IKE negotiation.
Remote ID Type	Specify the remote ID type for IKE negotiation. IP Address: Use an IP address as the ID in IKE negotiation. It is the default type. NAME: Use a name as the ID in IKE negotiation. It refers to FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name).
Remote ID	When the Remote ID Type is configured as NAME, enter a name of the remote peer as the ID in IKE negotiation .
SA Lifetime	Specify ISAKMP SA (Security Association) Lifetime in IKE negotiation. If the SA lifetime expired, the related ISAKMP SA will be deleted.
DPD	Check the box to enable or disable DPD (Dead Peer Detect) function. If enabled, the IKE endpoint can send a DPD request to the peer to inspect whether the IKE peer is alive.
DPD Interval	If DPD is triggered, specify the interval between sending DPD requests. If the IKE endpoint receives a response from the peer during this interval, it considers the peer alive. If the IKE endpoint does not receive a response during the interval, it considers the peer dead and deletes the SA.

■ Configuring the IKE Phase-2 Parameters

Choose the menu **VPN > IPSec > IPSec Policy** and click **Advanced Settings** to load the following page.

Figure 2-3 Configuring the IKE Phase-2 Parameters

In the **Phase-2 Settings** section, configure the IKE phase-2 parameters and click **OK**.

Encapsulation Mode

Specify the Encapsulation Mode as Tunnel Mode or Transport Mode. When both ends of the tunnel are hosts, either mode can be chosen. When at least one of the endpoints of a tunnel is a security gateway, tunnel mode is recommended to ensure safety.

Proposal

Select the proposal for IKE negotiation phase 2 to specify the encryption algorithm, authentication algorithm and protocol. Up to four proposals can be selected.

PFS

Select the DH group to enable PFS (Perfect Forward Security) for IKE mode, then the key generated in phase 2 will be irrelevant with the key in phase 1, which enhance the network security.

If you select None, it means PFS is disabled and the key in phase 2 will be generated based on the key in phase 1.

SA Lifetime

Specify IPSec SA (Security Association) Lifetime in IKE negotiation. If the SA lifetime expired, the related IPSec SA will be deleted.

2.1.3 Configuring the Failover Group

You can two IPsec connections in a failover group. If the primary connection fails, the secondary connection in the group automatically takes over.

Choose the menu **VPN > IPSec > IPSec Policy**, add multiple connection in the **IPsec Policy List** section, and then in the **Failover Group** section, click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-4 Configuring the Failover Group

Follow these steps to configure the parameters, then click **OK**:

Group Name	Give a name to identify the group.
Primary IPsec	Select a IP sec connection as the primary IPsec connection.
Secondary IPsec	Select a IP sec connection as the primary IPsec connection.
Automatic Failback	When enabled, the primary IPsec connection will be reused when it is restored,
Gateway failover time-out:	Set the time interval for the gateway to send a request to query the status of the primary IPsec connection.
Status:	Check the box to enable the group.

 **Note:** The two IPsec connections are established to the same remote IP, and the related parameters should be the same.

2.2 Verifying the Connectivity of the IPSec VPN tunnel

Choose the menu **VPN > IPSec > IPSec SA** to load the following page.

Figure 2-5 IPSec SA List

The **IPSec SA List** shows the information of the established IPSec VPN tunnel.

Name	Displays the name of the IPSec policy associated with the SA.
SPI	Displays the SPI (Security Parameter Index) of the SA, including outgoing SPI and incoming SPI. The SPI of each SA is unique.
Direction	Displays the direction (in: incoming/out: outgoing) of the SA.

Tunnel ID	Displays the IP addresses of the local and remote peers.
Data Flow	Displays the Local Subnet and Remote Subnet/host covered by the SA.
Protocol	Displays the authentication protocol and encryption protocol used by the SA.
AH Authentication	Displays the AH authentication algorithm used by the SA.
ESP Authentication	Displays the ESP authentication algorithm used by the SA.
ESP Encryption	Displays the ESP encryption algorithm used by the SA.

3 GRE VPN Configuration

To complete the GRE VPN configuration, make sure you have configured the IPsec VPN. Choose the menu **VPN > GRE** to load the following page. Click **Add** to add a GRE policy.

Figure 3-1 Configuring GRE Policy

Name Enter a name to identify the GRE VPN.

WAN Specify the WAN port on which the GRE tunnel is established.

Remote Gateway Enter an IP address as the remote gateway.

IPsec Encryption Specify whether to enable the encryption for the tunnel. If enabled, the GRE tunnel will be encrypted by IPsec (GRE over IPsec).

Pre-shared Key When the IPsec Encryption is configured as Encrypted, specify the Pre-shared Key for IKE authentication.

Local Subnet Specify the local network. It's always the IP address range of LAN on the local side of the VPN tunnel. It's formed from the IP address and subnet mask. After the VPN tunnel is established, the peer can access the local subnet.

Remote Subnet Specify the remote network. It's always the IP address range of LAN on the remote peer of the VPN tunnel. It's formed from the IP address and subnet mask. Only the traffic to the remote subnet will be forwarded through the VPN tunnel.

Local GRE IP Specify the local virtual IP address for the GRE VPN. The IP should not be the same as the Remote Gateway IP, nor should it be in Local Subnet or Remote Subnet.

Remote GRE IP Specify the remote virtual IP address for the GRE VPN. The IP should not be the same as the Remote Gateway IP, nor should it be in Local Subnet or Remote Subnet.

Status Check the box to enable the GRE VPN.

4 L2TP Configuration

To complete the L2TP configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Configure the VPN IP pool.
- 2) Configure L2TP globally.
- 3) Configure the L2TP server/client.
- 4) (Optional) Configure the L2TP users.
- 5) Verify the connectivity of the L2TP VPN tunnel.

Configuration Guidelines

- When the network mode is configured as Client-to-LAN and the gateway acts as the L2TP server, you don't need to configure the L2TP client on the gateway.
- When the network mode is configured as LAN-to-LAN and the gateway acts as the L2TP client gateway, you don't need to configure the L2TP users on the gateway.

4.1 Configuring the VPN IP Pool

Choose the menu **Preferences > VPN IP Pool > VPN IP Pool** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 4-1 Configuring the VPN IP Pool

VPN IP Pool List

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	IP Pool Name	Starting IP Address	Ending IP Address	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-

IP Pool Name:
 Starting IP Address:
 Ending IP Address:

Follow these steps to configure the VPN IP Pool:

- 1) Specify the name of the IP Pool.
- 2) Specify the starting IP address and ending IP address for the IP Pool.

Note:

- The starting IP address should not be greater than the ending IP address.
- The ranges of IP Pools cannot overlap.

4.2 Configuring L2TP Globally

Choose the menu **VPN > L2TP > Global Config** to load the following page.

Figure 4-2 Configuring L2TP Globally

General

L2TP Hello Interval: 60 seconds (60-1000)

PPP Hello Interval: 30 seconds (0-120, 0 means not send)

NetBIOS Passthrough: Enable

Save

In the **General** section, configure L2TP parameters globally and click **Save**.

L2TP Hello Interval

Specify the time interval of sending L2TP peer detect packets.

PPP Hello Interval

Specify the time interval of sending PPP peer detect packets.

NetBIOS Passthrough

Enable NetBIOS Passthrough function to allow NetBIOS packets to be broadcasted through VPN tunnel.

4.3 Configuring the L2TP Server

Choose the menu **VPN > L2TP > L2TP Server** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 4-3 Configuring the L2TP Server

L2TP Server Settings

Add Delete

ID	WAN	IPsec Encryption	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

WAN: ---

Authentication Type: Local

IPsec Encryption: ---

Pre-shared Key: (1-128 characters)

Local Network Type: Network Custom IP

Local Networks: ---

Status: Enable

OK Cancel

Follow these steps to configure the L2TP server:

- 1) Specify the WAN port used for L2TP tunnel.
- 2) Specify the authentication method used by the L2TP server. **Local:** Use a built-in authentication server to authenticate when the tunnel is created. If you don't have an additional external server, you can choose local authentication. **LDAP:** Use an external LDAP server to authenticate when the tunnel is created.
- 3) If you select the Local authentication type, configure the following parameters, and enable the L2TP tunnel.

IPsec Encryption	Specify whether to enable the encryption for the tunnel. If enabled, the L2TP tunnel will be encrypted by IPsec (L2TP over IPsec). If you choose Auto, the L2TP server will determine whether to encrypt the tunnel according to the client's encryption settings.
Pre-shared Key	When the IPsec Encryption is configured as Encrypted or Auto, specify the Pre-shared Key for IKE authentication.
Local Network Type	Select the type to set the local network for VPN Policy, there are two types: Network and Custom IP.
Local Networks	Select the local networks to apply the VPN Policy. The VPN Policy will only apply to the selected or filled local network.
Status	Check the box to enable the L2TP tunnel.

- 4) If you select the LDAP authentication type, configure the following parameters and enable the L2TP tunnel.

L2TP Server Settings

Add Delete

ID	WAN	IPsec Encryption	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

WAN: ---

Authentication Type: LDAP

LDAP Profile: ---

IPsec Encryption: Auto

Pre-shared Key: (1-128 characters)

Local Network Type: Network Custom IP

Local Networks: ---

IP Address Pool: ---

Primary DNS: ---

Secondary DNS: (Optional)

Network Mode: ---

Max Connections: (1-50)

Remote Subnet: /

Status: Enable

OK Cancel

LDAP Profile	Specify an LDAP entry that you have configured in Authentication > LDAP.
IPsec Encryption	Specify whether to enable the encryption for the tunnel. If enabled, the L2TP tunnel will be encrypted by IPsec (L2TP over IPsec). If you choose Auto, the L2TP server will determine whether to encrypt the tunnel according to the client's encryption settings.
Pre-shared Key	When the IPsec Encryption is configured as Encrypted or Auto, specify the Pre-shared Key for IKE authentication.
Local Network Type	Select the type to set the local network for VPN Policy, there are two types: Network and Custom IP.
Local Networks	Select the local networks to apply the VPN Policy. The VPN Policy will only apply to the selected or filled local network.
IP Address Pool	Specify the IP address pool from which the IP address will be assigned to the VPN client. The IP Pool referenced here can be created on the Preferences > VPN IP Pool page.

Primary/ Secondary DNS	Specify the DNS address to be assigned to the VPN client (eg 8.8.8.8). You can enter the router's LAN IP.
Network Mode	Specify the network mode. There are two modes: Client-to-LAN: Select this option when the L2TP client is a single host. It's commonly used to access the internal service from outside. LAN-to-LAN: Select this option when the L2TP client is a VPN gateway. The tunneling request is always initiated by a device. It's commonly used for access between two offices.
Max Connections	Specify the maximum number of connections that the tunnel can support. When Client-to-LAN network mode is enabled, it can be used to limit the number of devices connected at the same time.
Remote Subnet	Specify a remote network. (This is the IP address range of the LAN on the remote peer of the L2TP tunnel.) It's the combination of IP address and subnet mask. It takes effect when LAN-to-LAN network mode is enabled.
Status	Check the box to enable the L2TP tunnel.

4.4 Configuring the L2TP Client

Choose the menu **VPN > L2TP > L2TP Client** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 4-4 Configuring the L2TP Client

L2TP Client Settings

ID	Tunnel	Account Name	WAN	Server IP	IPsec Encryption	Remote Subnet	Working Mode	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Tunnel: (1-12 characters)
 Account Name:
 Password:
 WAN:
 Server IP:
 IPsec Encryption:
 Pre-shared Key: (1-128 characters)
 Remote Subnet:
 Upstream Bandwidth: 1000000 Kbps(100-1000000)
 Downstream Bandwidth: 1000000 Kbps(100-1000000)
 Working Mode: NAT Route
 Status: Enable

Follow these steps to configure the L2TP client:

- 1) Specify the name of the L2TP tunnel and configure other relevant parameters of the L2TP client according to your actual network environment.

Tunnel	Specify the name of L2TP tunnel.
---------------	----------------------------------

Account Name	Specify the account name of L2TP tunnel. It should be configured identically on server and client.
Password	Specify the password of L2TP tunnel. It should be configured identically on server and client.
WAN	Specify the WAN port used for L2TP tunnel.
Server IP	Specify the IP address or domain name of L2TP server.
IPSec Encryption	Specify whether to enable the encryption for the tunnel. If enabled, the L2TP tunnel will be encrypted by IPSec (L2TP over IPSec).
Pre-shared Key	Specify the Pre-shared Key for IKE authentication.
Remote Subnet	Specify the remote network. (It's always the IP address range of LAN on the remote peer of the VPN tunnel.) It's the combination of IP address and subnet mask.
Upstream Bandwidth	Specify the upstream limited rate in Kbps for L2TP tunnel.
Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the downstream limited rate in Kbps for L2TP tunnel.
Working Mode	Specify the Working Mode as NAT or Routing. NAT: NAT (Network Address Translation) mode allows the gateway to translate source IP address of L2TP packets to its WAN IP when forwarding L2TP packets. Route: Route mode allows the gateway to forward L2TP packets via routing protocol.
Status	Check the box to enable the L2TP tunnel.

2) Click **OK**.

4.5 (Optional) Configuring the L2TP Users

Choose the menu **VPN > Users > Users** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 4-5 Configuring the L2TP User

Follow these steps to configure the L2TP User:

- 1) Specify the account name and password of the L2TP User.

Account Name Specify the account name used for the VPN tunnel. This parameter should be the same with that of the L2TP client.

Password Specify the password of user. This parameter should be the same with that of the L2TP client.

- 2) Specify the protocol as L2TP and configure other relevant parameters cc.

Protocol Specify the protocol for the VPN tunnel. There are two types: L2TP and PPTP.

Local IP Address Specify the local IP address of the tunnel. You can enter the LAN IP of the local device.

IP Address Pool Specify the IP address pool from which the IP address will be assigned to the VPN client. The IP Pool referenced here can be created on the **Preferences > VPN IP Pool** page.

Primary/Secondary DNS Specify the IP address pool from which the IP address will be assigned to the VPN client. The IP Pool referenced here can be created on the Preferences > VPN IP Pool page.

Network Mode Specify the network mode. There are two modes:

Client-to-LAN: Select this option when the L2TP/PPTP client is a single host.

LAN-to-LAN: Select this option when the L2TP/PPTP client is a VPN gateway. The tunneling request is always initiated by a device.

Max Connections Specify the maximum number of connections that the tunnel can support.

Remote Subnet Specify a remote network. (This is the IP address range of the LAN on the remote peer of the L2TP/PPTP tunnel.) It's the combination of IP address and subnet mask.

3) Click **OK**.

4.6 Verifying the Connectivity of L2TP VPN Tunnel

Choose the menu **VPN > L2TP > Tunnel List** to load the following page.

Figure 4-6 L2TP VPN Tunnel List



ID	Account Name	Mode	Tunnel	Local IP	Remote IP	Remote Local IP	DNS
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

The **Tunnel List** shows the information of the established L2TP VPN tunnel.

Account Name Displays the account name of L2TP tunnel.

Mode Displays whether the device is server or client.

Tunnel Displays the name of the tunnel when the gateway is an L2TP client.

Local IP Displays the local IP address of the tunnel.

Remote IP Displays the remote real IP address of the tunnel.

Remote Local IP Displays the remote local IP address of the tunnel.

DNS Displays the DNS address of the tunnel.

5 PPTP Configuration

To complete the PPTP configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Configure the VPN IP pool.
- 2) Configure PPTP globally.
- 3) Configure the PPTP server/client.
- 4) (Optional) Configure the PPTP users.
- 5) Verify the connectivity of the PPTP VPN tunnel.

Configuration Guidelines

- When the network mode is configured as Client-to-LAN and the gateway acts as the PPTP server, you don't need to configure a PPTP client on the gateway.
- When the network mode is configured as LAN-to-LAN and the gateway acts as the PPTP client gateway, you don't need to configure PPTP users on the gateway.

5.1 Configuring the VPN IP Pool

Choose the menu **Preferences > VPN IP Pool > VPN IP Pool** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-1 Configuring the VPN IP Pool

The screenshot shows the 'VPN IP Pool List' configuration page. At the top right, there are 'Add' (green plus) and 'Delete' (red minus) buttons. Below is a table with the following structure:

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	IP Pool Name	Starting IP Address	Ending IP Address	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-

Below the table is a form with the following fields and buttons:

- IP Pool Name:
- Starting IP Address:
- Ending IP Address:
- OK Cancel

Follow these steps to configure the VPN IP Pool:

- 1) Specify the name of the IP Pool.
- 2) Specify the starting IP address and ending IP address for the IP Pool.

Note:

- The starting IP address should not be greater than the ending IP address.
- The ranges of IP Pools cannot overlap.

5.2 Configuring PPTP Globally

Choose the menu **VPN > PPTP > Global Config** to load the following page.

Figure 5-2 Configuring PPTP Globally

In the **General** section, configure PPTP parameters globally and click **Save**.

PPTP Hello Interval

Specify the time interval of sending PPTP peer detect packets.

PPP Hello Interval

Specify the time interval of sending PPP peer detect packets.

NetBIOS Passthrough

Enable NetBIOS Passthrough function to allow NetBIOS packets to be broadcasted through VPN tunnel.

5.3 Configuring the PPTP Server

Choose the menu **VPN > PPTP > PPTP Server** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-3 Configuring the PPTP Server

Follow these steps to configure the PPTP server:

- 1) Specify the WAN port used for PPTP tunnel.
- 2) Specify the authentication method used by the PPTP server. **Local:** Use a built-in authentication server to authenticate when the tunnel is created. If you don't have an additional external server, you can choose local authentication. **LDAP:** Use an external LDAP server to authenticate when the tunnel is created.
- 3) If you select the Local authentication type, configure the following parameters, and enable the PPTP tunnel.

MPPE Encryption	Specify whether to enable the MPPE encryption for the PPTP tunnel.
Local Network Type	Select the type to set the local network for VPN Policy, there are two types: Network and Custom IP.
Local Networks	Select the local networks to apply the VPN Policy. The VPN Policy will only apply to the selected or filled local network.
Status	Check the box to enable the PPTP tunnel.

- 4) If you select the LDAP authentication type, configure the following parameters and enable the L2TP tunnel.

L2TP Server Settings

Add Delete

ID	WAN	Ipssec Encryption	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

WAN: ---

Authentication Type: LDAP

LDAP Profile: ---

Ipssec Encryption: Auto

Pre-shared Key: (1-128 characters)

Local Network Type: Network Custom IP

Local Networks: ---

IP Address Pool: ---

Primary DNS: (Optional)

Secondary DNS: (Optional)

Network Mode: ---

Max Connections: (1-50)

Remote Subnet: /

Status: Enable

OK Cancel

LDAP Profile	Specify an LDAP entry that you have configured in Authentication > LDAP.
Local Network Type	Select the type to set the local network for VPN Policy, there are two types: Network and Custom IP.
Local Networks	Select the local networks to apply the VPN Policy. The VPN Policy will only apply to the selected or filled local network.
IP Address Pool	Specify the IP address pool from which the IP address will be assigned to the VPN client. The IP Pool referenced here can be created on the Preferences > VPN IP Pool page.
Primary/Secondary DNS	Specify the DNS address to be assigned to the VPN client (eg 8.8.8.8). You can enter the gateway's LAN IP.
Network Mode	Specify the network mode. There are two modes: <p>Client-to-LAN: Select this option when the PPTP client is a single host. It's commonly used to access the internal service from outside.</p> <p>LAN-to-LAN: Select this option when the PPTP client is a VPN gateway. The tunneling request is always initiated by a device. It's commonly used for access between two offices.</p>

Max Connections	Specify the maximum number of connections that the tunnel can support. When Client-to-LAN network mode is enabled, it can be used to limit the number of devices connected at the same time.
Remote Subnet	Specify a remote network. (This is the IP address range of the LAN on the remote peer of the PPTP tunnel.) It's the combination of IP address and subnet mask. It takes effect when LAN-to-LAN network mode is enabled.
Status	Check the box to enable the PPTP tunnel.

5.4 Configuring the PPTP Client

Choose the menu **VPN > PPTP > PPTP Client** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-4 Configuring the PPTP Client

Follow these steps to configure the PPTP client:

- 1) Specify the name of the PPTP tunnel and configure other relevant parameters of the PPTP client according to your actual network environment.

Tunnel	Specify the name of PPTP tunnel.
Account Name	Specify the account name of PPTP tunnel. It should be configured identically on server and client.
Password	Specify the password of PPTP tunnel. It should be configured identically on server and client.
WAN	Specify the WAN port used for PPTP tunnel.
Server IP	Specify the IP address or domain name of PPTP server.
MPPE Encryption	Specify whether to enable the encryption for the tunnel. If enabled, the PPTP tunnel will be encrypted by MPPE.

Remote Subnet	Specify the remote network. (It's always the IP address range of LAN on the remote peer of the VPN tunnel.) It's the combination of IP address and subnet mask.
Upstream Bandwidth	Specify the upstream limited rate in Kbps for PPTP tunnel.
Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the downstream limited rate in Kbps for PPTP tunnel.
Working Mode	Specify the Working Mode as NAT or Routing. NAT: NAT (Network Address Translation) mode allows the gateway to translate source IP address of PPTP packets to its WAN IP when forwarding PPTP packets. Route: Route mode allows the gateway to forward PPTP packets via routing protocol.
Status	Check the box to enable the PPTP tunnel.

2) Click **OK**.

5.5 (Optional) Configuring the PPTP Users

Choose the menu **VPN > Users > Users** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-5 Configuring the PPTP User

The screenshot shows the 'User Account List' configuration interface. At the top right, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Account Name, VPN Type, Local IP Address, IP Address Pool, Network Mode, Remote Subnet, and Operation. The table is currently empty. Below the table is a form for adding a new user. The form includes the following fields: Account Name, Password (with a strength indicator '(1-128 characters)'), VPN Type (set to PPTP), Local IP Address, IP Address Pool, Primary DNS, Secondary DNS (Optional), Network Mode, Max Connections, and Remote Subnet. There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom of the form.

Follow these steps to configure the PPTP User:

1) Specify the account name and password of the PPTP User.

Account Name	Specify the account name used for the VPN tunnel. This parameter should be the same as that of the PPTP client.
Password	Specify the password of users. This parameter should be the same as that of the PPTP client.

2) Specify the protocol as PPTP and configure other relevant parameters according to your actual network environment.

Protocol	Specify the protocol for the VPN tunnel. There are two types: L2TP and PPTP.
Local IP Address	Specify the local IP address of the tunnel. You can enter the LAN IP of the local device.
IP Address Pool	Specify the IP address pool from which the IP address will be assigned to the VPN client. The IP Pool referenced here can be created on the Preferences > VPN IP Pool page.
Primary/Secondary DNS	Specify the DNS address to be assigned to the VPN client (8.8.8.8 for example), you can enter the LAN IP of the gateway.
Network Mode	Specify the network mode. There are two modes: Client-to-LAN: Select this option when the PPTP/PPTP client is a single host. LAN-to-LAN: Select this option when the PPTP/PPTP client is a VPN gateway. The tunneling request is always initiated by a device.
Max Connections	Specify the maximum number of connections that the tunnel can support.
Remote Subnet	Specify a remote network. (This is the IP address range of the LAN on the remote peer of the PPTP/PPTP tunnel.) It's the combination of IP address and subnet mask.

3) Click **OK**.

5.6 Verifying the Connectivity of PPTP VPN Tunnel

Choose the menu **VPN > PPTP > Tunnel List** to load the following page.

Figure 5-6 PPTP VPN Tunnel List

ID	Account	Mode	Tunnel	Local IP	Remote IP	Remote Local IP	DNS
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

The **Tunnel List** shows the information of the established PPTP VPN tunnel.

Account	Displays the account name of PPTP tunnel.
Mode	Displays whether the device is server or client.
Tunnel	Displays the name of the tunnel when the gateway is a PPTP client.
Local IP	Displays the local IP address of the tunnel.
Remote IP	Displays the remote real IP address of the tunnel.
Remote Local IP	Displays the remote local IP address of the tunnel.

DNSDisplays the DNS address of the tunnel.

6 OpenVPN Configuration

To complete the OpenVPN Configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Configure the OpenVPN server/client.
- 2) Check the tunnel list to verify the connectivity of the OpenVPN tunnel.

Configuration Guidelines

- If you only use the gateway as the OpenVPN server, you don't need to configure the OpenVPN client.

6.1 Configuring the OpenVPN Server

Choose the menu **VPN > OpenVPN > OpenVPN Server** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 6-1 Configuring the OpenVPN Server

Specify the name of the OpenVPN server, configure other relevant parameters according to your actual network environment, and click **OK**.

Server Name Enter a name to identify the VPN server.

AccountPWD When enabled, OpenVPN will use username/password to authenticate users.

Status Check the box to enable the OpenVPN server.

Full Mode Select this option to allow all client traffic to pass through the tunnel.

Protocol	Select the communication protocol for the gateway which works as an OpenVPN Server. Two communication protocols are available: TCP and UDP.
Service Port	Enter a VPN service port to which a VPN device connects. The default port is 1194.
Local Network	Select the network on the local side of the VPN tunnel. The VPN policy will be only applied to the selected local network.
WAN	Select the WAN port on which the VPN tunnel is established. Each WAN port supports only one OpenVPN tunnel when the gateway works as a OpenVPN server.
IP Pool	Enter the IP address and subnet mask to decide the range of the VPN IP pool. The VPN server will assign IP address to the remote host when the tunnel is established. You can specify any reasonable IP address that will not cause overlap with the IP address of the LAN on the local peer gateway.
Primary DNS	Specify the primary DNS server pushed to clients.
Secondary DNS	Specify the secondary DNS server pushed to clients.
Authentication Type	<p>Specify the authentication method used by the OpenVPN server.</p> <p>Local: Use a built-in authentication server to authenticate when the tunnel is created. If you don't have an additional external server, you can choose local authentication.</p> <p>LDAP: Use an external LDAP server to authenticate when the tunnel is created.</p>

 **Note:**

- After saving the settings, export the OpenVPN file that ends in .ovpn which is to be used by the remote client. The exported OpenVPN file contains the certificate and configuration information. It may take about 2 minutes to export the certificate.
-

6.2 Configuring the OpenVPN Client

Choose the menu **VPN > OpenVPN > OpenVPN Client** and click **Add** to load the following page. The gateway will act as an OpenVPN client to establish the VPN tunnel with the remote Server.

Figure 6-2 Configuring the OpenVPN Client

Specify the name of the OpenVPN client, configure other relevant parameters according to your actual network environment, and click **OK**.

Client Name	Specify the name of OpenVPN client.
Mode	Select the authentication method used by the client. In ca mode, only the certificate file is required. In ca+pwd mode, additional username and password are required. Username - Enter the username required for client authentication. Password - Enter the password required for client authentication.
Service Port	Enter a VPN service port to which a VPN device connects. The default port is 1194.
Remote Server	Enter the IP address or domain name of the OpenVPN server.
Local Network	Select the network on the local side of the VPN tunnel. The VPN policy will be only applied to the selected local network.
WAN	Select the WAN port on which the VPN tunnel is established.
File Path	Browse the file to find the OpenVPN file that ends in .ovpn generated by the OpenVPN server.
Import	Click this button to import the OpenVPN file that ends in .ovpn generated by the OpenVPN server. Only one file can be imported. If the certificate file and configuration file are generated singly by the OpenVPN server, combine two files and import the whole file.

Status Check the box to enable the OpenVPN client.

6.3 Viewing the OpenVPN Tunnel

Choose the menu **VPN > OpenVPN > OpenVPN Tunnel** to load the following page.

Figure 6-3 Viewing the OpenVPN Tunnel

OpenVPN Tunnel List							
ID	Name	WAN	Local IP	Remote IP	Up Bytes	Down Bytes	Up Time
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Entry Count: 0 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to view the latest information.

Name Displays the account name of OpenVPN server/client.

WAN Displays the WAN port on which the VPN tunnel is established.

Local IP Displays the assigned virtual local IP address of the tunnel.

Remote IP Displays the assigned virtual local IP address of the tunnel.

Up Bytes Displays the upstream throughput.

Down Bytes Displays the downstream throughput.

Up Time Displays how long the tunnel has been up.

7 WireGuard VPN Configuration

To complete the WireGuard VPN Configuration, follow these steps:

- 1) Configure the WireGuard Server.
- 2) Configure the Peers settings.

7.1 Configuring the WireGuard VPN Server

Choose the menu **VPN > WireGuard > WireGuard** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 7-1 Configuring the WireGuard VPN Server

The screenshot shows the WireGuard configuration page. At the top, there is a table with columns: ID, Name, MTU, TX Bytes, RX Bytes, TX Packets, RX Packets, Listen Port, Status, and Operation. Below the table is a form for adding a new server. The form fields are: Name (empty), MTU (1420, with a range of 576-1440), Listen Port (51820, with a range of 1-65535), Private Key (masked with dots, with an eye icon and '(Optional)'), Public Key (test2), Local IP Address (empty), and Status (checked 'Enable'). There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom of the form.

Specify the name of the WireGuard VPN server, configure other relevant parameters according to your actual network environment, and click **OK**.

Name	Specify the name that identifies the Wireguard interface.
MTU	Specify the MTU value of the Wireguard interface. The default value 1420 is recommended.
Listen Port	Specify the port number that the Wireguard interface listens to.
Service Port	Enter a VPN service port to which a VPN device connects. The default port is 1194.
Private Key	Specify the private key of the Wireguard interface. The value will be automatically generated on the device, and you can also modify it manually.
Public Key	Specify the public key of the Wireguard interface. This field will be automatically generated based on the private key.
Local IP Address	Specify the IP address of the WireGuard interface. Please select a reserved address to avoid IP conflicts.

Status Specify whether to enable the Wireguard interface.

7.2 Configuring the Peers Settings

Choose the menu **VPN > WireGuard > Peers** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 7-2 Configuring the Peers

The screenshot shows the 'Peers' configuration page. At the top right, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons. Below is a table with columns: Interface, Endpoint, Endpoint Port, Allowed Address, TX Bytes, RX Bytes, TX Packets, RX Packets, Last Handshake, Status, and Operation. The table is currently empty. Below the table is a configuration form for a new peer with the following fields:

- Interface: [Dropdown menu]
- Public Key: [Text input]
- Endpoint: [Text input] (Optional)
- Endpoint Port: [Text input] (Optional, 1-65535)
- Allowed Address: [Text input] / [Text input]
- Preshared Key: [Text input] (Optional)
- Persistent Keepalive: [Text input] 25 (0-65535)
- Comment: [Text area] (0-128 characters)
- Status: Enable
- Buttons: OK, Cancel

You should configure an Endpoint and an Endpoint Port for at least one peer gateway.

Interface Specify the Wireguard interface to which the peer belongs.

Public key Specify the public key of the peer.

Endpoint Specify the IP address of the peer.

Endpoint Port Specify the port number of the peer.

Allowed Address Specify the address segment that allows traffic to pass through. Generally, you can fill in the subnet address of the peer.

Preshared Key Specify an optional shared key.

Persistent Keepalive Specify the tunnel keepalive packet interval.

Comment Enter the description of the peer.

Status Specify whether to enable the peer.

8 Users Configuration

To configure the accounts of users, Choose the menu **VPN > Users > Users** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 8-1 Configuring the User Account

The screenshot shows the 'User Account List' configuration interface. At the top right, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Account Name, VPN Type, Local IP Address, IP Address Pool, Network Mode, Remote Subnet, and Operation. The table currently contains one row with dashes in all cells. Below the table is a form for adding a new user account. The form fields are: Account Name (text input), Password (text input with a strength indicator '(1-128 characters)' and a dropdown for 'Low', 'Middle', 'High'), VPN Type (dropdown menu), Local IP Address (text input), IP Address Pool (dropdown menu), Primary DNS (text input), Secondary DNS (Optional) (text input), Network Mode (dropdown menu), Max Connections (text input), and Remote Subnet (text input). At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Enter the account name and password, configure other relevant parameters according to your actual network environment, and click **OK**.

Account Name Specify the account name used for the VPN tunnel.

Password Specify the account password used for the VPN tunnel. Your VPN clients will use the account name and password for authentication.

Protocol Specify the protocol for the VPN tunnel. There are two types: L2TP and PPTP.

Local IP Address Specify the local virtual IP address for the VPN server. Please avoid using the IP address in the DHCP range, which may cause IP conflict, you can enter the LAN IP of the gateway. To find out the DHCP Range, go to Network > LAN > Network List and view the information of the desired network.

IP Address Pool Specify the IP address pool from which the IP address will be assigned to the VPN client. The IP Pool referenced here can be created on the Preferences > VPN IP Pool page.

Primary/Secondary DNS Specify the DNS address to be assigned to the VPN client (8.8.8.8 for example), you can enter the LAN IP of the gateway.

Network Mode Specify the network mode. There are two modes:

Client-to-LAN: Select this option when the L2TP/PPTP client is a single host. It's commonly used to access the internal service from outside.

LAN-to-LAN: Select this option when the L2TP/PPTP client is a VPN gateway. The tunneling request is always initiated by a device. It's commonly used for access between two offices.

Max Connections	Specify the maximum number of connections that the tunnel can support. When Client-to-LAN network mode is enabled, it can be used to limit the number of devices connected at the same time.
Remote Subnet	Specify a remote network. (This is the IP address range of the LAN on the remote peer of the L2TP/PPTP tunnel.) It's the combination of IP address and subnet mask. It takes effect when LAN-to-LAN network mode is enabled.

 **Note:**

- Create VPN connection accounts for remote devices to connect to the VPN server.
 - If the gateway acts as the L2TP/PPTP client, you don't need to configure the L2TP/ PPTP user accounts on this page.
-

Part 14

Configuring SSL VPN

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. Quick Setup
3. Status Configuration
4. SSL VPN Server Configuration
5. Resource Management
6. User Management
7. Authentication

1 Overview

SSL VPN provides remote users the access to the enterprise network from anywhere on the Internet. The remote access is enabled through a Secure Socket Layer (SSL) VPN gateway.

2 Quick Setup

The quick setup will tell you how to configure the basic network parameters. To start quick setup, choose the menu **SSL VPN > Quick Setup > Quick Setup** and click **Start** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Quick Setup

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "General" for the SSL VPN server. It includes the following fields and options:

- SSL VPN Server:** A checkbox labeled "Enable" which is currently unchecked.
- Service Port:** A dropdown menu showing "443".
- Virtual IP Pool:** A text input field with a grey background.
- Primary DNS:** A text input field.
- Secondary DNS:** A text input field with "(Optional)" to its right.
- Listen on Port:** A text input field containing "1194" with "(1-65535)" to its right.
- Export Certificate:** A button located below the input fields.

Below the configuration fields is a **Note** section with four numbered instructions:

1. Please first go to Preferences > VPN IP Pool > VPN IP Pool to configure an IP pool for the virtual IP pool of the SSL VPN server.
2. The virtual IP pool should not overlap with the existing ones.
3. Please configure a large IP Pool for SSL VPN server.
4. The end-device cannot access the internet when SSL VPN is configured. If you want to access the internet, please select Local Authentication as Authentication Mode.

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: **Back**, **Next**, and **Finish**.

Follow the quick setup to configure the SSL VPN.

3 Status Configuration

This feature enables you to view the information of all the clients connected to the SSL VPN. You can also block or disconnect specific clients based on needs. Besides, you can view the currently locked out users, and add, delete or edit an entry.

3.1 Viewing the Status Information

Choose the menu **SSL VPN > Status > Connection** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Viewing the Status Information

Online Users									
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Username	Login IP	Virtual IP	login Time	Upload Bytes	Download Bytes	Operation	
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

In the **Online Users** section, you can view the information of all the clients connected to the SSL VPN. You can also block or disconnect specific clients based on needs.

Username Displays the username a client used for login.

Login IP Displays the IP address of a client.

Virtual IP Displays the virtual IP address assigned to a client by the SSL VPN server.

Login Time Displays the time when a client logged in.

Upload Displays the total upload traffic of a client.

Download Displays the total download traffic of a client.

Operation Block or disconnect a client.

Block: Disconnect a client and put the client into the list of Locked Out Users. A locked out user cannot log in again. To enable Username Lockout or IP Lockout, go to **SSL VPN > SSL VPN Server > Advanced**.

Disconnect: Disconnect a client for once.

3.2 Viewing Locked Out User

Choose the menu **SSL VPN>Status > Locked Out User** to load the following page.

Figure 3-2 Viewing Locked Out User

ID	Username	IP	Remaining Time	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

Type: Username
 Username: (1-20 characters, digits, or underscores)
 Locked Out Duration: seconds (1-259200)

In the **Currently Locked Out Users** section, you can view the currently locked out users, and add user and set the **Locked Out Duration**, delete or edit an entry.

Type	Displays locked out type.
Username	Displays the username of a locked out user.
IP	Displays the IP address of a locked out user.
Remaining Time	Displays the remaining effective time of a locked out entry.

Note:

- Before SSL VPN configuration, please go to **Preferences > VPN IP Pool > VPN IP Pool** to set a virtual IP pool for SSL VPN server.
- The SSL VPN will take effect after the configuration is completed.

4 SSL VPN Server Configuration

In SSL VPN Server, you can enable the feature and configure the SSL VPN settings.

4.1 Configuring the SSL VPN Server

Choose the menu **SSL VPN > SSL VPN Server > SSL VPN Server** to load the following page.

Figure 4-1 Configuring the SSL VPN Server

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for the SSL VPN Server. It includes a 'General' tab, an 'Enable' checkbox for the SSL VPN Server, and several input fields: 'Service Port', 'Virtual IP Pool', 'Primary DNS', and 'Secondary DNS'. There is also an 'Export Certificate' button and a radio button for 'Advanced'. A 'Save' button is located at the bottom of the configuration area.

Check the box to enable the feature, then configure the corresponding parameters

Service Port	Select the port for the SSL VPN server to listen on, and the VPN tunnel will take effect on the port.
Virtual IP Pool	Select a virtual IP Pool, and the SSL VPN server will assign an IP address to a connected client within the pool. To create an IP Pool, go to Preferences > VPN IP Pool > VPN IP Pool . The number of IP addresses in the IP pool should not be less than 4.
Primary DNS	Specify the IP address of the DNS server. Please assign the LAN IP to the SSLVPN DNS server.
Secondary DNS	Specify the IP address of the DNS server. Please assign the LAN IP to the SSLVPN DNS server.
Advanced	Click to display and configure the following parameters.
Listen on Port	Specify the port for the SSL VPN server to listen on. By default, it is 1194.
Authentication Type	Select the authentication for the clients. For RADIUS Authentication, go to SSL VPN > Authentication to configure.

Username Lockout	<p>Block a client with the specific login username.</p> <p>Max. Login Attempts: Specify the maximum failed login attempts for a username. After the maximum attempt is reached, the username will be locked out.</p> <p>Lock Duration: Specify how long the username will be locked out.</p>
IP Lockout	<p>Block a client of the specific login IP.</p> <p>Max. Login Attempts: Specify the maximum failed login attempts for a username. After the maximum attempt is reached, the username will be locked out.</p> <p>Lock Duration: Specify how long the username will be locked out.</p>
Idle Timeout	<p>Enable the feature and the VPN tunnel will close automatically if there is no traffic for the specified amount of time.</p>
Full Mode	<p>Enable the feature and all traffic will go through the SSL VPN tunnel. When the feature is disabled, only the resource-related traffic will go through the tunnel.</p>

 **Note:**

- Please first go to **Preferences > VPN IP Pool > VPN IP Pool** to configure an IP pool for the virtual IP pool of the SSL VPN server.
 - The virtual IP pool should not overlap with the existing ones.
 - Please configure a large IP Pool for SSL VPN server.
 - The end-device cannot access the internet when SSL VPN is configured. If you want to access the internet, please select Local Authentication as Authentication Mode.
-

5 Resource Management

This feature enables you to configure the resources the clients can access through the VPN tunnel, including IP range and domain name, or add the multiple tunnel resources to a group for better management.

5.1 Configuring the Resources

Choose the menu **SSL VPN > Resource Management > Tunnel Resources** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-1 Configuring the Resources

The screenshot shows the 'Tunnel Resources' configuration interface. At the top, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Name, Domain Name/IP Address, Resource Group, Protocol, Port, and Operation. The table is currently empty. Below the table is a form for adding a new resource. The form includes:

- Name:** A text input field with a note '(1-20 characters, digits, or underscores)'.
- Resource Type:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'IP Address'.
- IP Address/Subnet Mask:** A text input field with a slash '/' separator.
- Protocol:** A dropdown menu currently set to '---'.
- Buttons:** 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom left of the form.

Specify the name for the entry and configure other parameters, and click **OK**.

Resource Type Select the type for the resources.

IP Address: Specify IP range the clients can access, and the protocols the clients can use to access.

Domain Name: Specify domain name the clients can access.

5.2 Grouping Tunnel Resources

Choose the menu **SSL VPN > Resource Management > Tunnel Resources** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-2 Grouping Tunnel Resources

Group List

+ Add - Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Resource Group	Resources	Operation
-	-	-	-	-
Resource Group: <input type="text"/> (1-20 characters, digits, or underscores) Resources: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>				
-	1	GROUP_LAN		
-	2	GROUP_ALL		

Specify the name for the resource group, select the resources for the group, and click **OK**.

Note:

- A resource entry can be added to multiple resource groups, and the entry cannot be deleted after it is added to a resource group. If you want to delete a resource entry, please remove it from the resource group first.
- GROUP_LAN refers to the resources of the LAN segment.
- GROUP_ALL refers to the resources of all network segments.

6 User Management

This feature enables you to view and configure all user settings of the SSL VPN, or add multiple users to a group for better management.

6.1 Adding the User List

Choose the menu **SSL VPN > User Management > User** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 6-1 Adding the User List

The screenshot shows the 'User List' configuration interface. At the top right, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Username, User Group, Expiration Date, Status, and Operation. The table currently contains one row with dashes in all cells. Below the table is a form with the following fields:

- Username:** Text input field with a note: (1-20 characters, digits, or underscores)
- Password:** Text input field with a note: (1-64 characters, digits, or half-width symbols)
- User Group:** Dropdown menu
- Expiration Date:** Text input field with a note: (MM/DD/YYYY)
- Max. Concurrent Users:** Text input field with a note: (1-50)
- Status:** A checkbox labeled 'Enable' which is checked.

At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Configure relevant parameters and click **OK**.

Username	Specify the username a client used for login.
Password	Specify the password a client used for login.
User Group	Select which group the user belongs to. A user can only be added to one user group.
Expiration Date	Specify when the user will expire.
Max. Concurrent Users	Specify the maximum number of clients using the username for login concurrently. After the maximum number is reached, new login attempts will be rejected.
Status	Displays the status of the user entry.

6.2 Grouping Users

Choose the menu **SSL VPN > User Management > User Group** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 6-2 Grouping Users

The screenshot shows the 'User Group List' interface. At the top right, there are 'Add' (green plus icon) and 'Delete' (red minus icon) buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Name, Group Member, Resource Group, Radius Extended Value, and Operation. The table contains one row with dashes in all cells. Below the table is a form for adding a new user group with the following fields:

- Name:** A text input field with a placeholder '---' and a note '(1-20 characters, digits, or underscores)'.
- Group Member:** A text input field with a placeholder '---'.
- Resource Group:** A dropdown menu with a placeholder '---' and a downward arrow.
- Radius Extended Value:** A text input field with a placeholder '---' and a note '(Optional)'.

At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Specify the name for the user group, select the resources for the group, and click **OK**.

Name Specify a name for the user group.

Group Member Select the users you want to add into the group. All users in the group share the same resources.

Resource Group Select the resource group for the user group.

Radius Extended Value Only valid in radius authentication mode. It maps the user group with radius grouping information (which is carried by the CLASS attribute 25).

7 Authentication

This feature enables you to view and add authentication servers, or view and configure RADIUS server settings.

7.1 Adding the Authentication Server List

Choose the menu **SSL VPN > Authentication > Authentication Server** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 7-1 Adding the Authentication Server List

Authentication Server List

Column for Searching:

Search Index:

Search Scope:

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	Server Type	Description	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-

Name: (1-20 characters, digits, or underscores)

Server Type: Radius

Primary Server:

Secondary Server: (Optional)

Recover Time: Minutes (30-1440)

Description: (Optional, 1-50 characters)

Specify a name for the authentication server, configure relevant parameters and click **OK**.

Server Type Select the type for the authentication server. Currently, only RADIUS server is supported.

Primary Server Specify the primary server for authentication.

Secondary Server Specify the secondary server for authentication. When the primary server is down, the secondary server will be used.

Recover Time Specify the interval to connect the primary server again when the primary server is down.

Description Enter a description for the server.

Status Displays the status of the user entry.

7.2 Configuring the Radius Server

Choose the menu **SSL VPN > Authentication > Radius Server** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 7-2 Configuring the Radius Server

Specify the name for the RADIUS server, configure relevant parameters and click **OK**.

Authentication Server IP

Specify the IP address of the RADIUS server.

Authentication Mode

Select the authentication protocol for the RADIUS server. Two authentication protocols are available: PAP and CHAP.

Authentication Port

Specify the UDP destination port on the authentication server for authentication requests. The recommended port is 1812.

Accounting Port

Specify the UDP destination port on the RADIUS server for accounting requests. The recommended port is 1813.

Pre-Shared Key

Specify the password that will be used to validate the communication between the gateway and the RADIUS authentication server.

Max. Request

Specify the maximum number of requests sent when no response is received.

Request Timeout

Specify the maximum interval for request timeout. After timeout, the request will be sent again.

NAS IP

Specify the IP address for the gateway to communicate with the RADIUS server.

Part 15

Configuring Authentication

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. Local Authentication Configuration
3. Radius Authentication Configuration
4. Onekey Online Configuration
5. LDAP Configuration
6. Guest Resources Configuration
7. Viewing the Authentication Status

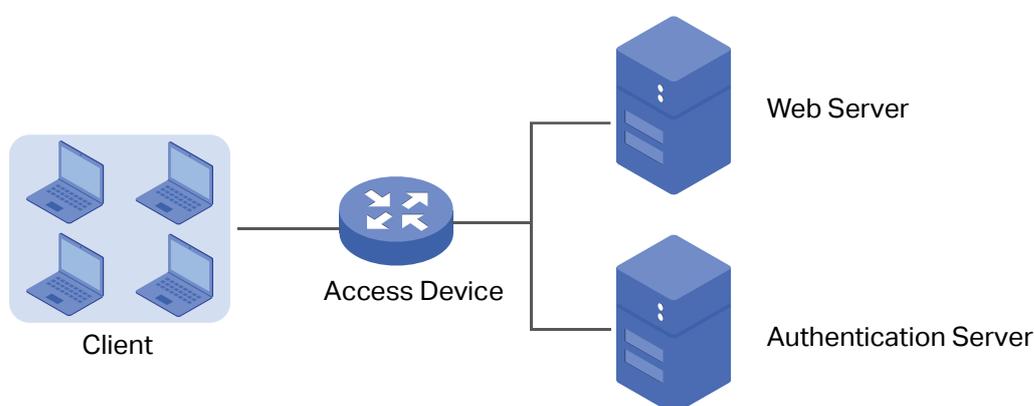
1 Overview

Portal authentication, also known as Web authentication, is usually deployed in a guest-access network (like a hotel or a coffee shop) to control the client's internet access. In portal authentication, all the client's HTTP requests will be redirected to an authentication page first. The client needs to enter the account information on the page to authenticate, then can visit the internet after the authentication succeeded.

1.1 Typical Topology

The typical topology of portal authentication is shown as below:

Figure 1-1 Topology of Portal Authentication



■ Client

The end device that needs to be authenticated before permitted to access the internet.

■ Access Device

The device that supports portal authentication. In this user guide, it means the gateway. The Access Device helps to: redirect all HTTP requests to the Web Server before authenticated; interact with the Authentication Server to authenticate the client during the authentication process; permit users to access the internet after the authentication succeeded.

■ Web Server

The web server responds to client's HTTP requests, and returns an authentication login page.

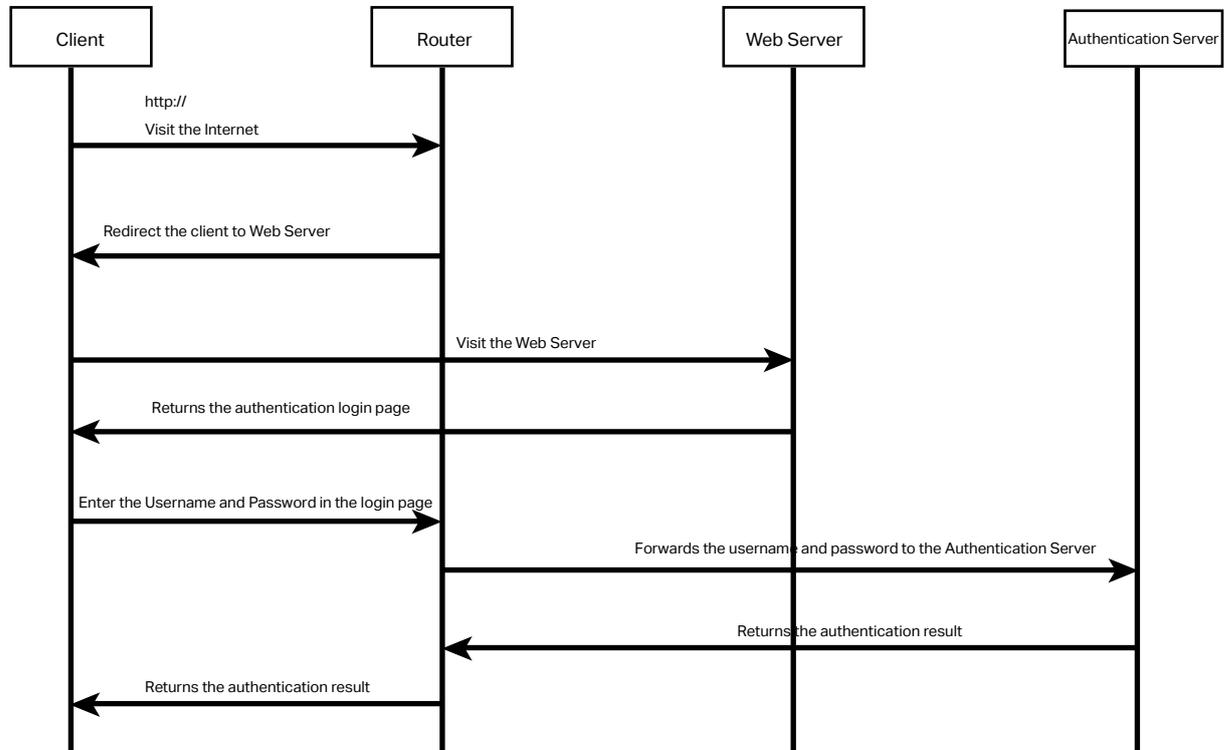
■ Authentication Server

The authentication server records the information of the user's account, and interacts with the access device to authenticate clients.

1.2 Portal Authentication Process

The portal authentication process is shown as below:

Figure 1-2 Portal Authentication Process



- 1) The client is connected to the gateway but not authenticated, and starts to visit the internet through HTTP;
- 2) The gateway redirects the client's HTTP request to the web server;
- 3) The client visits the web server;
- 4) The Web server returns the authentication login page to the client;
- 5) The client enters the username and password on the authentication login page;
- 6) The gateway forwards the username and password to the authentication server;
- 7) The authentication server returns the authentication result to the gateway;
- 8) The gateway replies to the client with the authentication result;
- 9) The client visits the internet after the authentication succeeded.

1.3 Supported Features

To configure portal authentication, you need to configure both the web server and the authentication server. The web server provides the authentication page for login; the authentication server records the account information and authenticates the clients.

1.3.1 Supported Web Server

The gateway has a built-in web server and also supports external web server. You can configure the authentication page either using the built-in server or the external server.

Custom Page

You can use the built-in web server and customize the authentication page on your gateway.

External Links

You can specify the external web server and configure the authentication page on the external web server.

1.3.2 Supported Authentication Server

The gateway provides three types of portal authentication:

Radius Authentication

In Radius authentication, you can specify an external Radius server as the authentication server. The user's account information are recorded in the Radius server.

Local Authentication

If you don't have an additional Radius server, you can choose local authentication. In local authentication, the gateway uses the built-in authentication server to authenticate. The built-in authentication server can record at most 500 local user accounts, and each account is can be used for at most 1024 clients to authenticate.

Onekey Online

In Onekey Online Authentication, users can access the network without entering any account information.

LDAP

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is an industry standard protocol for maintaining and accessing directory information over a network. LDAP Authentication allows you to bind the device to an LDAP server and use that server to authenticate LAN clients.

1.3.3 Guest Resources

Guest Resources is used to provide free resources for users before they pass the portal authentication.

2 Local Authentication Configuration

To configure local authentication, follow the steps:

- 1) Configure the authentication page.
- 2) Configure the local user account.

2.1 Configuring the Authentication Page

The browser will redirect to the authentication page when the client try to access the internet. On the authentication page, the user need to enter the username and password to log in. After the authentication succeeded, the user can access the internet.

Choose the menu **Authentication > Authentication Settings > Web Authentication** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Configuring the Authentication Page

Follow these steps to configure authentication page:

- 1) In the **Settings** section, enable authentication status, configure the idle timeout and portal authentication port.

Status

Check the box to enable portal authentication.

SSID&Interface

Specify the valid wireless interface and the effective interface, and you can specify more than one.

The selected LAN Network contains all clients of the SSIDs that belong to this LAN Network.

Idle Timeout	Specify the idle timeout. The client will be disconnected after the specified period (Idle Timeout) of inactivity, and is required to be authenticated again. Value 0 means the client will always keep online until the authentication timeout leased, even if the client remains inactive.
Portal Authentication Port	Enter the service port for portal authentication. The default setting is 8080.
HTTPS Redirection	Click the checkbox to enable HTTPS Redirection. With this feature enabled, the unauthorized clients will be redirected to the Portal page when they are trying to browse HTTPS websites. With this feature disabled, the unauthorized clients cannot browse HTTPS websites and are not redirected to the Portal page.

- 2) In the **Authentication Parameters** section, configure the parameters of the authentication page.

Authentication Page	Choose the authentication page type. Custom: You can use the built-in web server to customize the authentication page by specifying the background picture, welcome information and copyright information. External Links: You can specify a external web server to provide the authentication page by entering the URL of the external web server.
Background Picture	Click the Upload button to choose a local image as the background picture of the custom authentication page.
Welcome Information	Specify the welcome information to be displayed on the custom authentication page.
Copyright	Specify the copyright information to be displayed on the custom authentication page.
Page Preview	Click the Login Page Preview button, and you can preview the customized authentication page.
Authentication URL	Specify the URL for authentication page if you choose the Authentication Page as "External Links". The browser will redirect to this URL when the client starts the authentication.
Success Redirect URL	Specify the Success Redirect URL if you choose the Authentication Page as "External Links". The browser will redirect to this URL after the authentication succeeded.
Fail redirect URL	Specify the Fail Redirect URL if you choose the Authentication Page as "External Links". The browser will redirect to this URL if the authentication failed.

 **Note:**

If the web server is not deployed in the LAN, you need to create a Guest Resource entry to ensure the client can access the external web server before the authentication succeeded. For the configuration of Guest Resource, go to [Guest Resources Configuration](#).

- 3) Choose the authentication type, and configure the expiration reminder, then click **Save**.

Authentication Type	Choose the authentication type as Local Authentication.
Expiration Reminder	Check the box to enable expiration reminder. A remind page will appear to remind users when the online time is about to expire.
Time to Remind	Specify the number of days before the expiration date to remind users.
Remind Type	Specify the remind type. Remind Once: Remind the user only once after the authentication succeeded. Remind Periodically: Remind users at specified intervals during the remind period.
Remind Interval	Specify the interval at which the gateway reminds users if the remind type is specified as "Remind Periodically".
Remind Content	Specify the remind content. The content will be displayed on the Remind page.
Page Preview	Click the button to view the remind page.

2.2 Configuring the Local User Account

In Local authentication, the gateway uses the built-in authentication server to authenticate users. You need to configure the authentication accounts for the local users.

The gateway supports two types of local users:

Formal User: If you want to provide the user with network service for a long period of time (in days), you can create Formal User accounts for them.

Free User: If you want to provide the user with network service for a short period of time (in minutes), you can create Free User accounts for them.

2.2.1 Configuring the Local User Account

■ Configuring the Formal User Account

Choose the menu **Authentication > User Management > User Management** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 Configuring the Formal User Account

The screenshot shows the 'Local User List' configuration window. At the top, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below is a table with columns: ID, User Type, Username, Authentication Timeout, MAC Address, Description, Status, and Operation. The table is currently empty. Below the table is a configuration form for a 'Formal User' account. The form includes the following fields and values:

- User Type: Formal User (dropdown)
- Username: (text input, 1-100 Characters)
- Password: (text input, 1-100 Characters)
- Expiration Date: 12/31/2025 (MM/DD/YYYY)
- Authentication Period: 00:00-24:00 (HH:MM-HH:MM)
- MAC Binding Type: No Binding (dropdown)
- Maximum Users: 1 (1-1024)
- Upstream Bandwidth: 0 (Kbps (0 or 10-1000000. 0 means no limit))
- Downstream Bandwidth: 0 (Kbps (0 or 10-1000000. 0 means no limit))
- Name: (text input, 1-50 characters, optional)
- Telephone: (text input, 1-50 characters, optional)
- Description: (text input, 1-50 characters, optional)
- Status: Enable

At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Specify the user type, configure the username and password for the formal user account, and configure the other corresponding parameters. Then click **OK**.

User Type

Specify the user type as Formal User.

Username / Password

Specify the username and password of the account. The username cannot be the same as any existing one.

Expiration Date

Specify the expiration date of the account. The formal user can use this account to authenticate before this date.

Authentication Period

Specify the period during which the client is allowed to be authenticated.

MAC Binding Type

Specify the MAC Binding type. There are three types of MAC Binding: No binding, Static Binding and Dynamic Binding.

No Binding: The client's MAC address will not be bound.

Static Binding: Manually enter the MAC address of the client to be bound. Only the bound client is able to use the username and password to authenticate.

Dynamic Binding: The MAC address of the first client that passes the authentication will be bound. Afterwards only the bound client is able to use the username and password to authenticate.

MAC Address

Enter the MAC address of the client to be bound if you choose the MAC Binding type as "Static Binding".

Maximum Users

Specify the maximum number of users that are allowed use this account to authenticate.

Note: If the MAC Binding Type is either Static Binding or Dynamic Binding, only one client can use this username and password to authenticate, i.e., the bound client, even if the value of Maximum Users is configured to be greater than one.

Upstream Bandwidth / Downstream Bandwidth	(Optional) Specify the upstream / downstream bandwidth for the user. 0 means no limit.
Name	(Optional) Record the user's name.
Telephone	(Optional) Record the user's telephone number.
Description	(Optional) Enter a brief description for the user.
Status	Check the box to enable this account.

■ Configuring the Free User Account

Choose the menu **Authentication > User Management > User Management** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-3 Configuring the Free User Account

The screenshot shows the 'Local User List' configuration page. At the top right, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below is a table with columns: ID, User Type, Username, Authentication Timeout, MAC Address, Description, Status, and Operation. The 'Free User' account is selected. The configuration form below the table includes the following fields:

- User Type:** Free User (dropdown menu)
- Username:** (text input, 1-100 Characters)
- Password:** (text input, 1-100 Characters)
- Authentication Timeout (minutes):** 30 (1-1440)
- Authentication Period:** 00:00-24:00 (HH:MM-HH:MM)
- Maximum Users:** 1 (1-1024)
- Upstream Bandwidth:** 0 (Kbps (0 or 10-1000000, 0 means no limit))
- Downstream Bandwidth:** 0 (Kbps (0 or 10-1000000, 0 means no limit))
- Description:** (text input, 1-50 characters, optional)
- Status:** Enable

At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Specify the user type, configure the username and password for the free user account, and configure the other corresponding parameters. Then click **OK**.

User Type	Specify the user type as Free User.
Username / Password	Specify the username and password of the user account. The username cannot be the same as any existing one.
Authentication Timeout	Specify the free duration of the account. The default value is 30 minutes.
Maximum Users	Specify the maximum number of users that are allowed to use this username and password to authenticate.
Upstream Bandwidth / Downstream Bandwidth	(Optional) Specify the upstream/downstream bandwidth for the user. 0 means no limit.

Status Check the box to enable this account.

2.2.2 (Optional) Configuring the Backup of Local Users

Choose the menu **Authentication > User Management > Configuration Backup** to load the following page.

Figure 2-4 Configuring the Formal User

■ To backup local users' accounts

Click **Backup** button to backup all the local users accounts as a CSV file in ANSI coding format.

■ To restore local users' accounts

You can import the accounts to the gateway if you have backups. Click **Browse** to select the file path (the backup must be a CSV file), then click **Restore** to restore the accounts.

You can also manually add multiple local user accounts at a time:

- 1) Create an Excel file and add the local user accounts to it, then save the Excel file as a CSV file with ANSI coding format. You can click **Backup** to obtain a CSV file to view the correct format.
- 2) Click **Browse** to select the file path, then click **Restore** to restore the file.

Note:

Using Excel to open the CSV file may cause some numerical format changes, and the number may be displayed incorrectly. If you use Excel to edit the CSV file, please set the cell format as text.

3 Radius Authentication Configuration

Choose the menu **Authentication > Authentication Settings > Web Authentication** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Configuring the Radius Authentication

Follow these steps to configure Radius Authentication:

- 1) In the **Settings** section, enable the authentication status, configure the idle timeout and portal authentication port.

Status	Check the box to enable portal authentication.
SSID&Interface	Specify the valid wireless interface and the effective interface, and you can specify more than one. The selected LAN Network contains all clients of the SSIDs that belong to this LAN Network.
Idle Timeout	Specify the idle timeout. The client will be disconnected after the specified period (Idle Timeout) of inactivity, and is required to be authenticated again. Value 0 means the client will always keep online until the authentication timeout leased, even if the client remains inactive.
Portal Authentication Port	Enter the service port for portal authentication. The default setting is 8080.
HTTPS Redirection	Click the checkbox to enable HTTPS Redirection. With this feature enabled, the unauthorized clients will be redirected to the Portal page when they are trying to browse HTTPS websites. With this feature disabled, the unauthorized clients cannot browse HTTPS websites and are not redirected to the Portal page.

- 2) In the **Authentication Parameters** section, configure the parameters of the authentication page.

Authentication Page	Choose the authentication page type. Custom: You can use the built-in web server to customize the authentication page by specifying the background picture, welcome information and copyright information. External Links: You can use external pages by specifying the external links as the authentication page.
Background Picture	Click the Upload button to choose a local image as the background picture of the custom authentication page.
Welcome Information	Specify the welcome information to be displayed on the custom authentication page.
Copyright	Specify the copyright information to be displayed on the custom authentication page.
Page Preview	Click the Login Page Preview button, and you can preview the customized authentication page
Authentication URL	Specify the URL for authentication page if you choose the Authentication Page as "External Links". The browser will redirect to this URL when the client starts the authentication.
Success Redirect URL	Specify the Success Redirect URL if you choose the Authentication Page as "External Links". The browser will redirect to this URL after the authentication succeeded.
Fail redirect URL	Specify the Fail Redirect URL if you choose the Authentication Page as "External Links". The browser will redirect to this URL if the authentication failed.

 **Note:**

If the web server is not deployed in the LAN, you need to create a Guest Resource entry to ensure the client can access the external web server before the authentication succeeded. For the configuration of Guest Resource, go to [Guest Resources Configuration](#).

- 3) Specify the external Radius server and configure the corresponding parameters, then click **Save**.

Authentication Type	Choose the authentication type as Radius Authentication.
Primary Radius Server	Enter the IP address of the primary Radius server.
Secondary Radius Server	(Optional) Enter the IP address of the secondary Radius server. If the primary server is down, the secondary server will be effective.
Authentication Port	Enter the service port for Radius authentication. By default, it is 1812.

Authorized Share Key	Specify the authorized share key. This key should be the same configured in the Radius server.
Retry Times	Specify the number of times the gateway will retry sending authentication requests after the authentication failed.
Timeout Interval	Specify the timeout interval that the client can wait before the radius server replies.
Authentication Method	Specify the authentication protocol as PAP or CHAP.

4 Onekey Online Configuration

In Onekey Online authentication, users only need to click the “Onekey online” button on the authentication page, then can access the internet. The username and password are not required.

Choose the menu **Authentication > Authentication Settings > Web Authentication** to load the following page.

Figure 4-1 Configuring the Web Authentication

Follow these steps to configure Onekey Online Authentication:

- 1) In the **Settings** section, enable the authentication status, configure the idle timeout and portal authentication port.

Status	Check the box to enable portal authentication.
SSID&Interface	Specify the valid wireless interface and the effective interface, and you can specify more than one. The selected LAN Network contains all clients of the SSIDs that belong to this LAN Network.
Idle Timeout	Specify the idle timeout. The client will be disconnected after the specified period (Idle Timeout) of inactivity, and is required to be authenticated again. Value 0 means the client will always keep online until the authentication timeout leased, even if the client remains inactive.
Portal Authentication Port	Enter the service port for portal authentication. The default setting is 8080.
HTTPS Redirection	Click the checkbox to enable HTTPS Redirection. With this feature enabled, the unauthorized clients will be redirected to the Portal page when they are trying to browse HTTPS websites. With this feature disabled, the unauthorized clients cannot browse HTTPS websites and are not redirected to the Portal page.

- 2) In the **Authentication Parameters** section, configure the parameters of the authentication page and choose the authentication type, then click **Save**.

Authentication Page	Choose the type of authentication page as Custom Page. Note: External Links is not available for Onekey Online.
Background Picture	Click the Upload button to choose a local image as the background picture of the custom authentication page.
Welcome Information	Specify the welcome information to be displayed on the custom authentication page.
Copyright	Specify the copyright information to be displayed on the custom authentication page.
Page Preview	Click the Login Page Preview button, and you can preview the customized authentication page
Authentication Type	Choose the authentication type as Onekey Online.
Free Authentication Timeout	Specify the free duration for Onekey Online. When the free duration expired, users can click "Onekey Online" button on the authentication page to continue to visit the internet.

5 LDAP Configuration

LDAP Authentication allows you to bind the device to an LDAP server and use that server to authenticate LAN clients.

To configure Radius Authentication, follow the steps:

- 1) Configure the LDAP Profiles.
- 2) Configure the authentication page.

5.1 Configuring LDAP Profiles

Choose the menu **Authentication > LDAP > LDAP Profiles**, click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-1 Configuring the Web Authentication

Name	Specify the name of the LDAP profile..
Status	Check the box to enable LDAP Authentication.
Bind Type	Select the LDAP Authentication mode: Anonymous Mode, Simple Mode, or Regular Mode.
Server Address	Enter the Host name or IP address of the LDAP server.
Destination Port	Enter the port ID of the LDAP server. By default, the port ID is 389 when SSL is disabled and 636 when SSL is enabled.
Use SSL	Determine whether to use SSL for LDAP communication.
Regular DN	Specify the distinguished name (DN) of the administrator account. This parameter is required in Regular mode.

Regular Password	Specify the password of the administrator account. This parameter is required in Regular mode.
Common Name Identifier	Specify the common name for user authentication. It is usually "cn".
Base Distinguished Name	Specify the user identifier for user authentication. You can click the icon next to it to search and select from the LDAP directory tree.
Additional Filter	Specify the filter for user authentication. It is not supported in Simple Mode and is optional in other modes.
Group Distinguished Name	Specify the group identifier for user authentication. It is not supported in Simple Mode and is optional in other modes.

5.2 Configuring the Authentication Page

Choose the menu **Authentication > Authentication Settings > Web Authentication** to load the following page.

Figure 5-1 Configuring the Web Authentication

Follow these steps to configure LDAP Authentication:

- 1) In the **Settings** section, enable the authentication status, configure the idle timeout and portal authentication port.

Status	Check the box to enable portal authentication.
SSID&Interface	Specify the valid wireless interface and the effective interface, and you can specify more than one. The selected LAN Network contains all clients of the SSIDs that belong to this LAN Network.

Idle Timeout	Specify the idle timeout. The client will be disconnected after the specified period (Idle Timeout) of inactivity, and is required to be authenticated again. Value 0 means the client will always keep online until the authentication timeout leased, even if the client remains inactive.
Portal Authentication Port	Enter the service port for portal authentication. The default setting is 8080.
HTTPS Redirection	Click the checkbox to enable HTTPS Redirection. With this feature enabled, the unauthorized clients will be redirected to the Portal page when they are trying to browse HTTPS websites. With this feature disabled, the unauthorized clients cannot browse HTTPS websites and are not redirected to the Portal page.

- 2) In the **Authentication Parameters** section, configure the parameters of the authentication page and choose the authentication type, then click **Save**.

Authentication Page	Choose the type of authentication page as Custom Page. Note: External Links is not available for Onekey Online.
Background Picture	Click the Upload button to choose a local image as the background picture of the custom authentication page.
Welcome Information	Specify the welcome information to be displayed on the custom authentication page.
Copyright	Specify the copyright information to be displayed on the custom authentication page.
Page Preview	Click the Login Page Preview button, and you can preview the customized authentication page
Authentication Type	Choose the authentication type as LDAP.
LDAP Profile	Select a profile from previously configured LDAP profiles.

6 Guest Resources Configuration

Guest resources are limited network resources provided for users before they pass the portal authentication.

You can configure the guest resources in two ways:

■ Five Tuple Type

Specify the client and the network resources the client can visit based on the settings of IP address, MAC address, VLAN ID, service port and protocol. It is recommended to select Five Tuple Type when the IP address and service port of the free network resource are already known.

■ URL Type

Specify the client and the network resources the client can visit based on the settings of the URL, IP address, MAC address and service port. It is recommended to select URL Type when the URL of the free network resource is already known.

Note:

By default, the Guest Resource table is empty, which means all the clients cannot visit any network resource before they pass the portal authentication.

6.1 Configuring the Five Tuple Type

Choose the menu **Authentication > Authentication Settings > Guest Resources** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 6-1 Configuring the Five Tuple Type

Guest Resources Settings

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	Type	Source IP Range	Destination IP Range	Source Port	Destination Port	Valid Range	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

+ Add - Delete

Name: (1-50 characters)

Type: Five Tuple Type ▼

Source IP Range: / (Optional)

Destination IP Range: / (Optional)

Source MAC Address: (XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX, optional)

Source Port Range: - (1-65535, optional)

Destination Port Range: - (1-65535, optional)

Protocol: TCP ▼

Direction: LAN ▼

Description: (1-50 characters, optional)

Status: Enable

Specify the client and the network resources the client can visit by configuring the IP address, MAC address and service port, then click **OK**.

Name	Enter the name of the guest resource entry.
Type	Choose the guest resource type as Five Tuple Type.
Source IP Range	Specify the IP range of the client(s) by entering the network address and subnet mask bits. Only the specified clients can visit the guest resources.
Destination IP Range	Specify the IP range of the server(s) that provides the guest resources by entering the network address and subnet mask bits.
Source MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the client.
Source Port Range	Enter the source service port range.
Destination Port Range	Enter the destination service port range.
Description	Enter a brief description for the Guest Resources entry to make it easier to search and manage.
Protocol	Specify the protocol as TCP or UDP for the Guest Resources.
Status	Check the box to enable the guest resource entry.

 **Note:**

In a Guest Resource entry, if some parameter is left empty, it means the gateway will not restrict that parameter. For example, if the source IP range is left empty, it means all the clients can visit the specified guest resources.

6.2 Configuring the URL Type

Choose the menu **Authentication > Authentication Settings > Guest Resources** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 6-1 Configuring the URL

Guest Resources Settings Add Delete

ID	Name	Type	Source IP Range	Destination IP Range	Source Port	Destination Port	Valid Range	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Name: (1-50 characters)

Type: (URL Type)

URL Address: (1-128 characters)

Source IP Range: / (Optional)

Source MAC Address: (XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX, optional)

Source Port Range: - (1-65535, optional)

Direction: (LAN)

Description: (1-50 characters, optional)

Status: Enable

Specify the client and the network resources the client can visit by configuring the URL of the network resource and the parameters of the clients, then click **OK**.

Name	Enter the name of the guest resource entry.
Type	Choose the guest resource type as URL Type.
URL Address	Enter the URL address or IP address of the network resource that can be visited for free.
Source IP Range	Configure the IP range of the client(s) by entering the network address and subnet mask bits.
Source MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the client.
Source Port Range	Enter the source service port range.
Description	Enter a brief description for the Guest Resources entry to make it easier to search and manage.
Status	Check the box to enable the guest resource entry.

 **Note:**

In a Guest Resource entry, if some parameter is left empty, it means the gateway will not restrict that parameter. For example, if the source IP range is left empty, it means all the clients can visit the specified guest resources.

7 Viewing the Authentication Status

Choose the menu **Authentication > Authentication Status > Authentication Status** to load the following page.

Figure 7-1 Viewing the Authentication Status

Authenticated User List

Entry Count: 0 Refresh Offline

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Type	Starting Time	IP Address	MAC Address	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Here you can view the clients that pass the portal authentication.

Type Displays the authentication type of the client.

Starting Time Displays the starting time of the authentication.

IP Address Displays the client's IP address.

MAC Address Displays the client's MAC address.

Part 16

Managing Services

CHAPTERS

1. Services
2. Dynamic DNS Configurations
3. UPnP Configuration
4. mDNS Configuration
5. Reboot Schedule
6. DNS Proxy

1 Services

1.1 Overview

The Services module incorporates two functions, Dynamic DNS (DDNS) and UPnP (Universal Plug and Play) to provide convenient network services.

1.2 Support Features

Dynamic DNS

Nowadays, network protocols such as PPPoE and DHCP are widely employed by ISPs to assign public IP addresses to users. The use of these protocols can cause the user's public IP address to change dynamically. DDNS is an internet service that ensures a fixed domain name can be used to access a network with a varying public IP address. This means the user's network can be more easily accessed by internet hosts.

UPnP

With the development of networking and advanced computing techniques, greater numbers of devices feature in networks. UPnP is designed to solve the problem of communication between these network devices. UPnP function allows devices dynamically discover and communicate with each other without additional configurations. For example, it allows the download of P2P software without opening ports.

mDNS

mDNS (Multicast DNS) Repeater can help mDNS request/reply packets spread across different network segments. With this function, services published using the mDNS protocol can be discovered across network segments.

Reboot Schedule

In Reboot Schedule, you can set schedules to reboot the connected devices periodically based on needs. You can configure the reboot schedule flexibly by creating multiple entries.

DNS Proxy

DNS Proxy provides the LAN side clients with the DNS query service. It forwards the DNS request from the LAN side clients to the selected upstream DNS server and forwards the DNS reply accordingly.

2 Dynamic DNS Configurations

With Dynamic DNS configurations, you can:

- Configure and view Peanuthull DDNS
- Configure and view Comexe DDNS
- Configure and view DynDNS
- Configure and view NO-IP DDNS
- Custom DDNS
- Configure and view TP-Link DDNS

2.1 Configure and View Peanuthull DDNS

Choose the menu **Services > Dynamic DNS > Peanuthull** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Configure Peanuthull DDNS

The screenshot shows the Peanuthull DDNS configuration interface. At the top, there are '+ Add' and '- Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Interface, Account Name, Update Interval, Status, Service Status, Domain Name, Service Type, and Operation. The table is currently empty. Below the table is a configuration form with the following fields: Interface (dropdown), Account Name (text input with a 'Go to register' link), Password (text input with a visibility toggle), Update Interval (dropdown), and Status (checkbox labeled 'Enable'). At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Follow these steps to configure Peanuthull DDNS.

- 1) Click **Go to register** to visit the official website of Peanuthull, register an account and a domain name.
- 2) Configure the following parameters and click **OK**.

Interface	Select the interface for the DDNS service.
Account Name	Enter the account name of your DDNS account. You can click Go to register to visit the official website of Peanuthull to register an account.
Password	Enter the password of your DDNS account.
Update Interval	Specify the Update Interval that the device dynamically updates IP addresses for registered domain names.
Status	Check the box to enable the DDNS service.

3) View the DDNS status.

Figure 2-2 View the Status of Peanuthull DDNS

Peanuthull									
+ Add - Delete									
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Interface	Account Name	Update Interval	Status	Service Status	Domain Name	Service Type	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	WAN1	user1	6 hours	Enabled ✘	Offline	---	---	 

Status Displays whether the corresponding DDNS service is enabled.

Service Status Displays the current status of DDNS service.

Offline: DDNS service is offline.

Connecting: DDNS client is connecting to the server.

Online: DDNS is working normally.

Incorrect account name or password: The account name or password is incorrect.

Domain Name Displays the Domain Names obtained from the DDNS server.

Service Type Displays the DDNS service type, including Professional service and Standard service.

2.2 Configure and View Comexe DDNS

Choose the menu **Services > Dynamic DNS > Comexe** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-3 Configure Comexe DDNS

Comexe									
+ Add - Delete									
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Interface	Account Name	Update Interval	Status	Service Status	Domain Name	Service Type	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Interface:

Account Name: [Go to register](#)

Password:

Update Interval:

Status: Enable

Follow these steps to configure Comexe DDNS.

- 1) Click **Go to register** to visit the official website of Comexe, register an account and a domain name.
- 2) Configure the following parameters and click **OK**.

Interface	Select the interface for the DDNS service.
Account Name	Enter the account name of your DDNS account. You can click Go to register to visit the official website of Comexe to register an account.
Password	Enter the password of your DDNS account.
Update Interval	Specify the Update Interval that the device dynamically updates IP addresses for registered domain names.
Status	Check the box to enable the DDNS service.

3) View the DDNS status.

Figure 2-4 View the Status of Comexe DDNS

Comexe								
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Interface	Account Name	Update Interval	Status	Service Status	Domain Name	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	WAN1	user1	6 hours	Enabled	Offline	---	

Status	Displays whether the corresponding DDNS service is enabled.
Service Status	Displays the current status of DDNS service. Offline: DDNS service is offline. Connecting: DDNS client is connecting to the server. Online: DDNS is working normally. Incorrect account name or password: The account name or password is incorrect.
Domain Name	Displays the Domain Names obtained from the DDNS server.

2.3 Configure and View DynDNS

Choose the menu **Services > Dynamic DNS > DynDNS** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-5 Configure DynDNS

DynDNS + Add - Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Interface	Account Name	Update Interval	Status	Service Status	Domain Name	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Interface:

Account Name: [Go to register](#)

Password:

Domain Name:

Interval Mode: Fixed Custom

Update Interval:

Status: Enable

Follow these steps to configure DynDNS.

- 1) Click **Go to register** to visit the official website of DynDNS and register an account and a domain name.
- 2) Configure the following parameters and click **OK**.

Interface	Select the interface for the DDNS service.
Account Name	Enter the account name of your DDNS account. You can click Go to register to visit the official website of DynDNS to register an account.
Password	Enter the password of your DDNS account.
Domain Name	Specify the domain name that you registered with your DDNS service provider.
Interval Mode	Choose to use fixed or custom interval.
Update Interval	Specify the Update Interval that the device dynamically updates IP addresses for registered domain names.
Status	Check the box to enable the DDNS service.

- 3) View the DDNS status.

Figure 2-6 View the Status of DynDNS

DynDNS + Add - Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Interface	Account Name	Update Interval	Status	Service Status	Domain Name	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	WAN1	user1	6 hours	Enabled ✘	Connecting	domainname1.com	<input type="button" value="✎"/> <input type="button" value="🗑"/>

Status	Displays whether the corresponding DDNS service is enabled.
---------------	---

Service Status	Displays the current status of DDNS service. Offline: DDNS service is offline. Connecting: DDNS client is connecting to the server. Online: DDNS is working normally. Incorrect account name or password: The account name or password is incorrect. Incorrect domain name: The domain name is incorrect.
Domain Name	Displays the Domain Names obtained from the DDNS server.

2.4 Configure and View NO-IP DDNS

Choose the menu **Services > Dynamic DNS > NO-IP** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-7 View NO-IP DDNS

Follow these steps to configure NO-IP DDNS.

- 1) Click **Go to register** to visit the official website of NO-IP and register an account and a domain name.
- 2) Configure the following parameters and click **OK**.

Interface	Select the interface for the DDNS service.
Account Name	Enter the account name of your DDNS account. You can click Go to register to visit the official website of NO-IP to register an account.
Password	Enter the password of your DDNS account.
Domain Name	Specify the domain name that you registered with your DDNS service provider.
Interval Mode	Choose to use fixed or custom interval.

Update Interval Specify the Update Interval that the device dynamically updates IP addresses for registered domain names.

Status Check the box to enable the DDNS service.

3) View the DDNS status.

Figure 2-8 View the Status of NO-IP DDNS

NO-IP								
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Interface	Account Name	Update Interval	Status	Service Status	Domain Name	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	WAN1	user1	6 hours	Enabled	Connecting	domainname1.com	

Status Displays whether the corresponding DDNS service is enabled.

Service Status Displays the current status of DDNS service.

Offline: DDNS service is offline.

Connecting: DDNS client is connecting to the server.

Online: DDNS is working normally.

Incorrect account name or password: The account name or password is incorrect.

Incorrect domain name: The domain name is incorrect.

Domain Name Displays the Domain Names obtained from the DDNS server.

2.5 Custom DDNS

The gateway lists common DDNS service providers. If the service provider you registered at is not listed, you can add a custom DDNS entry.

- 1) Register at a service provider, and get your username, password, and domain name.
- 2) Choose the menu **Service > Dynamic DNS > Custom DDNS** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-9 Custom DDNS

- 3) Configure the following parameters and click **OK**.

Update URL	Enter the URL provided by your DDNS service provider in format of <code>http://[USERNAME]:[PASSWORD]@api.cp.easydns.com/dyn/tomato.php?hostname=[DOMAIN]&myip=[IP]</code> . The gateway will automatically update user information to the service provider.
Interface	Select the WAN port which the DDNS entry applies to.
Account Name	Enter your account name for the service provider.
Password	Enter your password for the service provider.
Domain Name	Enter the domain name provided by your service provider. Remote users can use the domain name to access your local network through WAN port.
Interval Mode	Choose to use fixed or custom interval.
Update Interval	Specify the update interval to report the change of the WAN IP address for DDNS service.
Status	Click the checkbox to enable the entry.

2.6 TP-Link DDNS

To use TP-Link DDNS servers, go to **System Tools > Controller Settings** and enable Cloud-Based Controller Management, then log in with your TP-Link ID.

- 1) Go to the **TP-Link ID** page. Enter your TP-Link ID and password to log in.

TP-Link ID (Email):

Password:

Log In

Note: To create an account, retrieve or change your password, please visit <https://omada.tplinkcloud.com/>.

- 2) Go to **Services > Dynamic DNS > TP-Link DDNS**, click **Add** to load the following page

<input type="checkbox"/>	Domain Name	Registered Date	Interface	Status	Operation	Delete
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

+ Add - Delete

Domain Name: .tplinkdns.com

WAN:

Note:
 The TP-Link DDNS entry can only be applied to an online WAN port.
 If the applied port goes offline, the entry will automatically be applied to another online WAN port.

- 3) Enter a domain name.
- 4) Apply the domain name to the WAN port. Note that the TP-Link DDNS entry can only be applied to one online WAN port. If the applied port goes offline, the entry will be automatically be applied to another online WAN port.
- 5) Click **OK** to apply the settings.

3 UPnP Configuration

UPnP (Universal Plug and Play) is the networking protocol that allows devices to discover each other and then establish connections for communication. With the help of UPnP, it is convenient to realize seamless connections between the devices, especially from WAN to LAN.

Choose the menu **Services > UPnP** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Configure UPnP

The screenshot shows the UPnP configuration page. In the 'General' section, the 'Enable UPnP' checkbox is unchecked. The 'LAN Interface' is set to 'LAN' and the 'Interface' is set to '---'. A 'Save' button is located below these options. The 'UPnP Portmap List' section contains an empty table with the following columns: ID, Description, Protocol, Interface, IP Address, External Port, Internal Port, Status, and Operation. Above the table are three action buttons: 'Delete', 'Delete All', and 'Refresh'.

Follow these steps to configure UPnP.

- 1) Check the box to enable the **UPnP** function.
- 2) Specify the effective interfaces. Then click **Save**
- 3) (Optional) In the **UPnP Portmap List** section, view the portmap list.

Description	Displays the description of the application using UPnP protocol.
Protocol	Displays the protocol type used in the process of UPnP.
Interface	Displays the interface used in the process of UPnP.
IP Address	Displays the IP address of the local host.
External Port	Displays the external port that is opened for the application by the gateway.
Internal Port	Displays the internal port that is opened for the application by the local host.
Status	Displays the status of the corresponding UPnP entry. Enabled: The mapping is active. Disabled: The mapping is inactive.

4 mDNS Configuration

Enable Multicast DNS Repeater and specify the Forward Rules to determine the network segments that mDNS request/reply packets can cross, that is, the range of services that can be found across network segments. Bonjour is Apple's open zero-configuration network standard based on the mDNS protocol, which can automatically discover computers, devices and services on the IP network.

Choose the menu **Services > mDNS**, click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 4-1 Configure mDNS Function

The screenshot shows the mDNS configuration page. At the top, there is a section for 'mDNS' with a 'Multicast DNS Repeater' checkbox (unchecked) and a 'Forward Rules' dropdown menu. Below this is a 'Save' button. The main section is 'mDNS(Bonjour) Rules', which contains a table with columns: ID, Description, Service Network, Client Network, Services, and Operation. A modal form is open for adding a new rule, with fields for Description, Service Network, Client Network, and Services, and 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. The table shows one existing rule with ID 1, Description 'default', Service Network 'All', Client Network 'All', and Services 'any'.

Multicast DNS Repeater

Check the box to enable the function.

Forward Rules

Select one or multiple mDNS (Bonjour) rules for forwarding mDNS request/reply packets.

Description

Give a name to the rule.

Service Network

Select a network, then its mDNS reply packets will be forwarded by the gateway.

Client Network

Select a network, then its mDNS request packets will be forwarded by the gateway.

Service

Select the service type, then the traffic of these services can be forwarded by the gateway.

In **Services** section, click **Add** and manage the service types supported by mDNS.

Services

+ Add
 - Delete

☐	ID	Name	Domain	Type	Operation
-	-	-	-	-	-
<div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> Name: <input style="width: 80px; height: 15px;" type="text"/> Domain: <input style="width: 80px; height: 15px;" type="text"/> </div> <div style="display: flex; gap: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div> </div>					
-	1	any	any	Default	
-	2	AirPlay	_airplay_tcp_raop_tcp_appletv-v2_tcp	Default	
-	3	AFP	_afpovertcp_tcp	Default	
-	4	BitTorrent	_bittorrent_tcp	Default	
-	5	FTP	_ftp_tcp_sftp-ssh_tcp	Default	
-	6	iChat	_presence_tcp_ichat_tcp	Default	
-	7	iTunes	_daap_tcp_home-sharing_tcp_apple-mobdev_tcp_daap_tcp	Default	
-	8	Printers	_ipp_tcp_pdf-datastream_tcp_printer_tcp_http_tcp_http_alt_tcp_ipp-tls_tcp_fax-ipp_tcp_riousofprint_tcp_ica-networking_tcp_ica-networking2_tcp_ptp_tcp_canon-bjnp1_tcp_ipp-ipp_tcp	Default	
-	9	Samba	_smb_tcp_smbdirect_tcp	Default	
-	10	Scanners	_ipp_tcp_pdf-datastream_tcp_scanner_tcp_http_tcp_http_alt_tcp_ipp-tls_tcp_fax-ipp_tcp_riousofprint_tcp_ica-networking_tcp_ica-networking2_tcp_ptp_tcp_canon-bjnp1_tcp_ipp-ipp_tcp	Default	
-	11	SSH	_ssh_tcp	Default	

Name Enter a name to identify the service

Status Enter the domain of the service.

5 Reboot Schedule

In Reboot Schedule, you can set schedules to reboot the connected devices periodically based on needs. You can configure the reboot schedule flexibly by creating multiple entries. The system time can be set in **System Tools > Time Settings**.

Choose the menu **Services > Reboot Schedule**, click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 5-1 Configure Reboot Schedule

The screenshot displays the 'Reboot Schedule' configuration interface. At the top, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. Below is a table with the following structure:

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	Status	Next Execution	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	-	-	-	-	-

Below the table, the configuration form includes:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Status:** A checkbox labeled 'Enable' which is checked.
- Occurrence:** A dropdown menu set to 'Every', followed by 'Day', 'at', '00', ':', '00', and a location dropdown set to 'in Beijing, Hong Kong, Perth, Singapore'.
- Buttons:** 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Name Enter a name to identify the reboot schedule entry.

Status Click the checkbox to enable the reboot schedule entry.

Occurrence Specify the date and time for the devices to reboot.

6 DNS Proxy

DNS Proxy provides the LAN side clients with the DNS query service. It forwards the DNS request from the LAN side clients to the selected upstream DNS server and forwards the DNS reply accordingly.

DNSSEC (DNS Security Extensions), DoT (DNS over TLS), and DoH (DNS over Https) are three security options for DNS Proxy. DNSSEC will verify the integrity of DNS records, and DoT / DoH will encrypt the query.

When DNS Override is enabled, DNS requests from the selected LAN network will be intercepted and forwarded to a specific DNS server, even if the DNS server set on the client device is not the router's LAN IP.

All options need an upstream DNS server that supports them. Before turning on DNSSEC/DOH/DOT, make sure the system time is correct. Accurate global time stamps are necessary for cryptographic algorithms of DNS with security options.

6.1 DNSSEC

Choose the menu **Services > DNS Proxy > DNSSEC** to load the following page.

Figure 6-1 Configure DNSSEC

DNSSEC

DNSSEC: Enable

DNS Server: 8.8.8.8 + Add

8.8.4.4 - Minus

Action for Bogus Replies: Pass Drop

Diagnose

Domain:

Type: IPv4 IPv6

DNS Server:

Result

ID	Domain Name	Type	IP Address	Verify Result
-	-	-	-	-

In **DNSSEC**, configure the following parameters.

DNSSEC Check the box to enable the function.

DNS Server Specify the IP address of the DNSSEC server. Up to 2 IP addresses can be configured.

Action for Bogus Replies Specify the action for processing DNS reply packets whose signature verification fails.

In **Diagnose** section, configure the following parameters.

Domain	Specify the domain name you want to query.
Type	Query the IPv4/IPv6 address corresponding to the domain name.
DNS Server	Specify the upstream DNS server used.
Diagnose	<p>Click to diagnose the domain name and check the results.</p> <p>There may be three diagnostic results:</p> <p>Secure: The queried domain name has passed the DNSSEC signature verification.</p> <p>Bogus: The queried domain name has not passed the DNSSEC signature verification. The domain name authentication failed.</p> <p>Insecure: The device cannot verify the DNSSEC signature of the queried domain name.</p>

6.2 DOH

Choose the menu **Services > DNS Proxy > DOH** to load the following page.

Figure 6-2 Configure DOH

DOH Server

DOH Server: Enable

Save

	Provider	DNS Server	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

Name:

DNS Server:

Status: Enable

OK Cancel

-	Google	https://dns.google/dns-query	Disabled ●	--
-	Cloudflare	https://cloudflare-dns.com/dns-query	Disabled ●	--
-	Quad9_1	https://dns.quad9.net/dns-query	Disabled ●	--
-	Quad9_2	https://dns9.quad9.net/dns-query	Disabled ●	--
-	CleanBrowsing	https://doh.cleanbrowsing.org/doh/security-filter	Disabled ●	--

Enable the feature and click **Add** to create a new server entry.

DOH Server	Check the box to enable the DoH (DNS over Htpps) server.
Name	Specify the name of the server.
DNS Server	Specify the domain name of DNS Server. Only one server can be added.
Status	Specify whether to enable this server entry. Up to two server entries can be enabled at the same time.

6.3 DOT

Choose the menu **Services > DNS Proxy > DOT** to load the following page.

Figure 6-3 Configure DOT

DOT Server

DOT Server: Enable

Save

	Provider	DNS Server	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-	-

Name:

DNS Server: Add

Status: Enable

OK Cancel

-	Google	8.8.8.8 8.8.4.4	Disabled	--
-	Quad9	9.9.9.9 9.9.9.10	Disabled	--
-	Cloudflare	1.1.1.1 1.0.0.1	Disabled	--
-	CleanBrowsing	185.228.168.9 185.228.169.9	Disabled	--
-	OpenDNS	208.67.222.222 208.67.220.220	Disabled	--

Enable the feature and click **Add** to create a new server entry.

DOT Server

Check the box to enable the DoT (DNS over TLS) server.

Name

Specify the name of the server.

DNS Server

Specify the IP address of DNS Server. Up to two servers can be added.

Status

Specify whether to enable this server entry. Up to two server entries can be enabled at the same time.

6.4 DNS Cache

DNS caching further speeds up domain name translation/resolution by handling it for recently visited addresses before the request is sent to the internet. Even if your network can use a large number of public DNS servers for translation/resolution, it's still faster to have a local copy.

DNS Cache takes effect only when the gateway is used for DNS proxy. DNS Cache will be cleared if you perform the following operations:

- Edit the WAN or VPN settings (e.g., network reconfigurations).
- Edit the DNS Proxy settings (DNSSEC/DOT/DOH/DNS Cache).

1) Choose the menu **Services > DNS Proxy > DNS Cache** to load the following page.

2) Select the checkbox to enable DNS Cache.

3) (Optional) Specify the time to live (TTL) value in seconds. When the life cycle of the DNS entry exceeds the TTL value, the DNS cache will be automatically cleared. The range is 1–86400. If it's not specified, the system will use the default TTL value of each DNS message

4) Choose the DNS cache information (IPv4 or IPv6) to display. Check the DNS cache status in the cache list. You can clear the cache information if necessary.

6.5 DNS Override

When DNS Override is enabled, packets will be forwarded to the user-defined DNS Server instead of this device. Please make sure the user-defined DNS Server is available.

5) Choose the menu **Services > DNS Proxy > DNS Cache** to load the following page.

1) Select the checkbox to enable DNS Override.

2) Specify the upstream DNS server. You can click Add to add multiple servers.

3) Specify the effective LAN network to apply DNS Override and click **Save**.

Part 17

System Tools

CHAPTERS

1. Overview
2. Admin Setup
3. Management
4. Controller Settings
5. CWMP Settings
6. SNMP
7. Diagnostics
8. LED Control
9. Time Settings
10. System Log
11. Mail Notification (for 4G models)

1 Overview

1.1 Overview

The System Tools module provides several system management tools for users to manage the gateway.

1.2 Support Features

Admin Setup

Admin Setup is used to configure the parameters for users' login. With this function, you can modify the login account, specify the IP subnet and mask for remote access and specify the HTTP and HTTPS server port.

Management

The Management section is used to manage the firmware and the configuration file of the gateway. With this function, you can reset the gateway, backup and restore the configuration file, reboot the gateway and upgrade the firmware.

Controller Settings

With this feature configured, you can configure your gateway via Cloud-Based Controller.

CWMP Settings

CWMP (CPE WAN Management Protocol, also called TR-069) allows Auto-Configuration Server (ACS) to perform auto-configuration, provision, connection, and diagnostics to this device. You may configure this function under your ISP's instructions.

SNMP

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a standard network management protocol. It helps network managers to configure and monitor network devices. With SNMP, network managers can view and modify network device information, detect and analyze network error, and so on. The gateway supports SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c.

Diagnostics

Diagnostics is used to detect network errors and equipment failures. With this function, you can test the connectivity of the network with ping or traceroute command and inspect the gateway under the help of technicians.

LED Control

Manually control the LED status via the web.

Time Settings

Time Settings is used to configure the system time and the daylight saving time.

System Log

System Log is used to view the system log of the gateway. You can also configure the gateway to send the log to a server.

Mail Notificatio (only for 4G models)

You can configure mail-related parameters and choose the modules to apply these parameters to. Some modules will use the configuration information to send emails.

2 Admin Setup

In Admin Setup module, you can configure the following features:

- Admin Setup
- Remote Management
- System Settings

2.1 Admin Setup

Choose the menu **System Tools > Admin Setup > Admin Setup** to load the following page.

Figure 2-1 Modifying the Admin Account

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Account" with the following fields and labels:

- Old Username: [input field]
- Old Password: [input field]
- New Username: [input field] (1-64 letters, digits or special characters)
- New Password: [input field] (10-64 letters, digits or special characters)
- Confirm New Password: [input field] (10-64 letters, digits or special characters)

A "Save" button is located at the bottom left of the form.

In the **Account** section, configure the following parameters and click **Save** to modify the admin account

Old Username	Enter the old username.
Old Password	Enter the old password.
New Username	Enter a new username.
New Password	Enter a new password.
Confirm New Password	Re-enter the new password for confirmation.

2.2 Remote Management

Choose the menu **System Tools > Admin Setup > Remote Management** and click **Add** to load the following page.

Figure 2-2 Configuring Remote Management

Remote Management

+ Add - Delete

ID	Subnet/Mask	Status	Operation
-	-	-	-

Subnet/Mask: /

Status: Enable

OK Cancel

In the **Remote Management** section, configure the following parameters and click **OK** to specify the IP subnet and mask for remote management.

Subnet/Mask Enter the IP Subnet and Mask of the remote host.

Status Check the box to enable the remote management function for the remote host.

2.3 System Settings

Choose the menu **System Tools > Admin Setup > System Settings** to load the following page.

Figure 2-3 Configuring System Settings

Settings

HTTP Server Port: (80, 1024-65535)

Redirect HTTP to HTTPS

HTTPS Server Port: (443, 1024-65535)

HTTPS Server Status: Enable

Web Idle Timeout: minutes (5-60)

Referrer Check: Enable

Save

In the **Settings** section, configure the following parameters and click **Save**.

HTTP Server Port Enter the http server port for web management. The port number should be different from other servers'. The default setting is 80. After changing the http server port, you should access the interface by using IP address and the port number in the format of 192.168.0.1:1600.

Redirect HTTP to HTTPS Check the box to enable the function, then you will access the web management interface by HTTPS protocol instead of HTTP protocol.

HTTPS Server Port Enter the https server port for web management. The port number should be different from other servers'. The default setting is 443. After changing the https server port, you should access the interface by using IP address and the port number in the format of https://192.168.0.1:1800.

HTTPS Server Status Check the box to enable HTTPS Server.

Web Idle Timeout Enter a session timeout time for the device. The web session will log out for security if there is no operation within the session timeout time.

Referrer Check

Enabling Referrer Check can avoid CSRF (Cross-site request forgery) and improve the security of the device. When enabled, the referrer field and the message IP will be strictly verified. In some cases (such as using a domain name to access the device web), the referrer field verification will fail.

3 Management

In Management module, you can configure the following features:

- Factory Default Restore
- Backup & Restore
- Reboot
- Firmware Upgrade

3.1 Factory Default Restore

Choose the menu **System Tools > Management > Factory Default Restore** to load the following page.

Figure 3-1 Resetting the Device



Click **Factory Restore** to reset the device.

3.2 Backup & Restore

Choose the menu **System Tools > Management > Backup & Restore** to load the following page.

Figure 3-2 Backup & Restore Page



Choose the corresponding operation according to your need:

- 1) In the **Backup** section, click **Backup** to save your current configuration as a configuration file and export the file to the host.
- 2) In the **Restore** section, select one configuration file saved in the host and click **Restore** to import the saved configuration to your gateway.

3.3 Reboot

Choose the menu **System Tools > Management > Reboot** to load the following page.

Figure 3-3 Rebooting the Device

A screenshot of a web interface titled "Reboot". It features a single button labeled "Reboot" centered on the page.

Click **Reboot** to reboot the device.

3.4 Firmware Upgrade

Choose the menu **System Tools > Management > Firmware Upgrade** to load the following page.

Figure 3-4 Configure System Settings

A screenshot of a web interface titled "Firmware Upgrade". It contains the following elements: "Firmware Version:" with a text input field; "Hardware Version:" with a text input field; "New Firmware File:" with a text input field and a "Browse" button; and an "Upgrade" button at the bottom left.

Select one firmware file and click **Upgrade** to upgrade the firmware of the device.

4 Controller Settings

To make your controller adopt your gateway, make sure the gateway can be discovered by the controller. Controller Settings enable your gateway to be discovered in either of the following scenarios.

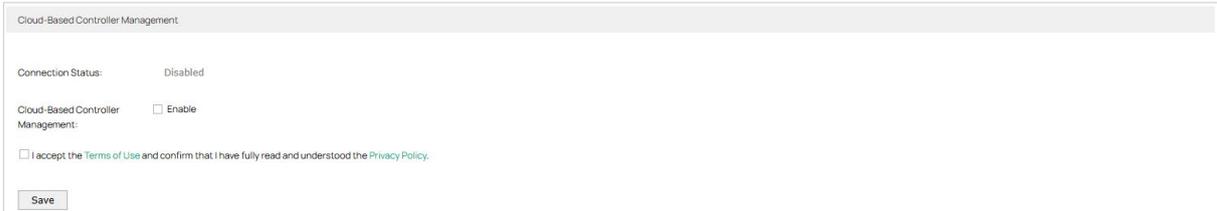
- If you are using Omada Cloud-Based Controller, [Enable Cloud-Based Controller Management](#).
- If your gateway and controller are located in the same network, LAN and VLAN, the controller can discover and adopt the gateway without any controller settings. Otherwise, you need to inform the gateway of the controller's URL/IP address, and one possible way is to [Configure Controller Inform URL](#).

For details about the whole procedure, refer to the User Guide of Omada SDN Controller. The guide can be found on the download center of our official website: <https://support.omadanetworks.com/document/>.

4.1 Enable Cloud-Based Controller Management

Choose the menu **System Tools > Controller Settings** page. In the Cloud-Based Controller Management section, enable Cloud-Based Controller Management and click **Save**. You can check the connection status on this page. Check the box before **I accept the Terms of Use and confirm that I have fully read and understood the Privacy Policy**.

Figure 4-1 Cloud-Based Controller Management



Cloud-Based Controller Management

Connection Status: Disabled

Cloud-Based Controller Management: Enable

I accept the Terms of Use and confirm that I have fully read and understood the Privacy Policy.

Save

4.2 Configure Controller Inform URL

Choose the menu **System Tools > Controller Settings** page. In the Controller Inform URL section, inform the gateway of the controller's URL/IP address, and click **Save**. Then the gateway makes contact with the controller so that the controller can discover the gateway.

Figure 4-2 Cloud-Based Controller Management



Controller Inform URL

Inform URL/IP Address:

Save

5 CWMP Settings

CWMP (CPE WAN Management Protocol, also called TR-069) allows Auto-Configuration Server (ACS) to perform auto-configuration, provision, connection, and diagnostics to this device. You may configure this function under your ISP's instructions.

Choose the menu **System Tools > CWMP Settings** to load the following page.

Follow these steps to configure CWMP settings:

- 1) Check the box to enable the CWMP function.
- 2) Configure the following parameters and click **Save**.

Inform	Enable this feature to send an Inform message to the ACS (Auto Configuration Server) periodically.
Inform Data Type	Select the type of data to interact with the ACS.
Inform Interval	Enter the time in seconds when the Inform message will be sent to the ACS.
ACS URL	Enter the web address of the ACS which is provided by your ISP.
ACS Username/ Password	Enter the username and password to log in to the ACS server.
Last Registered ACS URL	The URL of the last ACS that actively interacted with the device.
Interface used by TR-069 client	Select which interface to be used by the TR-069 client.
CPE ID	The ID that the device uses when interacting with the ACS.

Connection Request Authentication	<p>Select this checkbox to enable authentication for the connection request.</p> <p>Username/Password - Enter the username and password for the ACS server to log in the router.</p> <p>Path - Click Manual and enter a path, or click Random to generate a random path.</p> <p>Port - Enter the port that connects to the ACS server.</p> <p>URL - Enter the URL used to connect the ACS to the device.</p>
Simple Traversal of UDP over NATs	<p>Select this checkbox to enable STUN for the connection request.</p> <p>STUN Maximum Keep Alive Period - Enter the maximum keep alive time period.</p> <p>STUN Minimum Keep Alive Period - Enter the minimum keep alive time period.</p> <p>STUN Server Address - Enter the STUN server address.</p> <p>STUN Server Port - Enter the STUN server port.</p> <p>STUN Server Username - Enter the STUN server username.</p> <p>STUN Server Password - Enter the STUN server password.</p>

6 SNMP

Choose the menu **System Tools > SNMP > SNMP** to load the following page.

Figure 6-1 Configuring SNMP

The screenshot shows the SNMP configuration interface. It includes the following fields and values:

- SNMPv1&v2c:** Enable
- Contact:** www.tp-link.com
- Device Name:** ER7206
- Location:** TP-Link
- Get Community:** (empty)
- Get Trusted Host:** 0.0.0.0
- SNMPv3:** Enable
- Username:** (empty)
- Password:** (empty)

A **Save** button is located at the bottom left of the form.

Follow these steps to configure the SNMP function:

- 1) Choose the SNMP version and specify the corresponding parameter.
- 2) Configure the following parameters and click **Save**.

■ If SNMPv1&v2c is enabled:

Contact	Enter the textual identification of the contact person for this the device, for example, contact or e-mail address.
Device Name	Enter a name for the device.
Location	Enter the location of the device. For example, the name can be composed of the building, floor number, and room location.
Get Community	Specify the community that has read-only access to the device's SNMP information.
Get Trusted Host	Enter the IP address that can serve as Get Community to read the SNMP information of this device.

■ If SNMPv3 is enabled:

Username	With SNMPv3 selected, specify the username of your NMS (Network Management Station) to access the SNMP agent. You need to configure the username correspondingly on your NMS.
Password	With SNMPv3 selected, specify the password of your NMS (Network Management Station) to access the SNMP agent. You need to configure the password correspondingly on your NMS.

7 Diagnostics

In Diagnostics module, you can configure the following features:

- Diagnostics
- Remote Assistance

7.1 Diagnostics

Ping and traceroute are both used to test the connectivity between two devices in the network. In addition, ping can show the roundtrip time between the two devices directly and traceroute can show the IP address of gateways along the route path.

7.1.1 Configuring Ping

Choose the menu **System Tools > Diagnostics > Diagnostics** to load the following page.

Figure 7-1 Configuring Diagnostics

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring diagnostics. At the top, it says 'Diagnostics'. Below that, there are two radio buttons: 'Ping' (selected) and 'Traceroute'. Underneath, there are two input fields: 'Destination IP/Domain Name' and 'Interface'. A 'Start' button is located below these fields. Below the 'Start' button, there is a section for 'Advanced' parameters, which is currently collapsed. The text 'The Router is ready.' is visible in the expanded area.

Follow these steps to configure Diagnostics:

- 1) In **Diagnostics** section, select **Ping** and configure the following parameters.

Diagnostics Tool Select **Ping** to test the connectivity between the gateway and the desired device.

Destination IP/ Domain Name Enter the IP address or the domain name that you want to ping or tracet.

Interface Select the interface that sends the detection packets.

- 2) (Optional) Click **Advanced** and the following section will appear.

Figure 7-2 Advanced Parameters for Ping Method

The screenshot shows the advanced parameters for the Ping method. There are two input fields: 'Ping Count' with a value of 4 and a range of (1-50), and 'Ping Packet Size' with a value of 64 and a range of (4-1472 Bytes). A close button is visible in the top left corner of the advanced section.

Ping Count Specify the count of the test packets to be sent during the ping process.

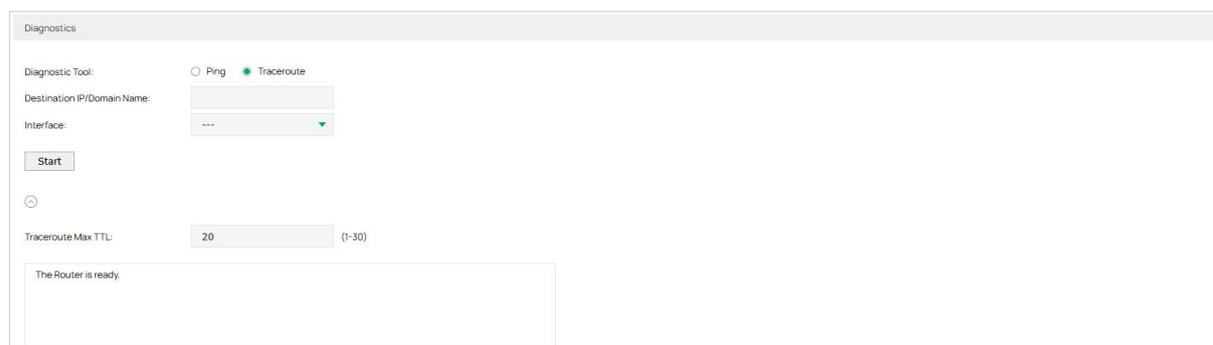
Ping Packet Size Specify the size of the test packets to be sent during the ping process.

3) Click **Start**.

7.1.2 Configuring Traceroute

Choose the menu **System Tools > Diagnostics > Diagnostics** to load the following page.

Figure 7-3 Configuring Diagnostics



Follow these steps to configure Diagnostics:

1) In **Diagnostics** section, select **Traceroute** and configure the following parameters.

Diagnostic Tool Select **Traceroute** to test the connectivity between the gateway and the desired device.

Destination IP/ Domain Name Enter the IP address or the domain name that you want to ping or tracert.

Interface Select the interface that sends the detection packets.

2) (Optional) Click **Advanced**.

Traceroute MAX TTL Specify the traceroute max TTL (Time To Live) during the traceroute process. It is the maximum number of the route hops the test packets can pass through.

3) Click **Start**.

7.2 Remote Assistance

Note:

Please make contact with the technicians before trying to use this function.

Choose the menu **System Tools > Diagnostics > Remote Assistance** to load the following page.

Figure 7-4 Remote Assistance Page

The screenshot shows a web interface with two main sections. The top section is titled "Remote Assistance" and contains the text: "It is recommended not to enable Remote Assistance. Enable this function with the help of technicians if needed." Below this text is a label "Remote Assistance:" followed by an unchecked checkbox and the word "Enable". A "Save" button is positioned below the checkbox. The bottom section is titled "Diagnostic Information" and contains the text: "You can export diagnostic information and send it to technicians for assistance." Below this text is an "Export" button.

- 1) In the **Remote Assistance** section, check the box and click **Save** to enable the remote assistance function and then the technicians can access your gateway and help to solve the problems by SSH.
- 2) In the **Diagnostic Information** section, click **Export** to download a binary (.bin) file containing helpful information, and send it to the technicians for help.

8 LED Control

You can manually turn on or off the LED via a web browser.

Choose the menu **System Tools > LED Control**, check the box to turn on or off the LED.

Figure 8-1 Getting Automatically from the Internet



The screenshot shows a web interface for LED control. At the top, there is a header bar labeled "LED ON/OFF". Below this, the text "LED:" is followed by a checked checkbox and the word "Enable". At the bottom left of the interface is a "Save" button.

9 Time Settings

In Time Settings module, you can configure the following features:

- System Time
- Daylight Saving Time

9.1 Setting the System Time

Choose one method to set the system time.

9.1.1 Getting time from the Internet Automatically

Choose the menu **System Tools > Time Settings > Time Settings** to load the following page.

Figure 9-1 Getting Automatically from the Internet

The screenshot shows the 'Time Settings' configuration interface. It includes the following fields and options:

- Current Time:** 08/01/2025 19:50:38
- Time Config:** Get automatically from the Internet Manually
- Time Zone:** (UTC+08:00) Beijing, Hong Kong, Perth, Singapore (dropdown menu)
- Primary NTP Server:** 0.0.0.0
- Secondary NTP Server:** 0.0.0.0 (XXXX optional)
- Save** button

In the **Time Settings** section, configure the following parameters and click **Save**.

Current Time	Displays the current system time.
Time Config	Select Get automatically from the Internet to get the system time from the NTP server.
Time Zone	Select the time zone the device is in.
Primary NTP Server	Enter the IP address of the Primary NTP server.
Secondary NTP Server	Enter the IP address of the Secondary NTP server.

9.1.2 Setting the System Time Manually

Choose the menu **System Tools > Time Settings > Time Settings** to load the following page.

Figure 9-2 Setting the System Time Manually

In the **Time Settings** section, configure the following parameters and click **Save**.

Current Time	Displays the current system time.
Time Config	Select Manually to set the system time manually.
Date	Specify the date of the system.
Time	Specify the time of the system.
Synchronize with PC's Clock	Synchronize the system time of the gateway with PC's clock.

9.2 Setting the Daylight Saving Time

Choose one method to set the daylight saving time.

9.2.1 Predefined Mode

Choose the menu **System Tools > Time Settings > Time Settings** to load the following page.

Figure 9-3 Predefined Mode Page

In the **Daylight Saving Time** section, select one predefined DST schedule and click **Save**.

DST Status	Check the box to enable the DST function.
Mode	Select Predefined Mode to choose a predefined daylight saving time.
USA	Select the Daylight Saving Time of the USA. It is from 2:00 a.m. on the Second Sunday in March to 2:00 a.m. on the First Sunday in November
Europe	Select the Daylight Saving Time of Europe. It is from 1:00 a.m. on the Last Sunday in March to 1:00 a.m. on the Last Sunday in October.

Australia	Select the Daylight Saving Time of Australia. It is from 2:00 a.m. on the First Sunday in October to 3:00 a.m. on the First Sunday in April.
New Zealand	Select the Daylight Saving Time of New Zealand. It is from 2:00 a.m. on the Last Sunday in September to 3:00 a.m. on the First Sunday in April.

9.2.2 Recurring Mode

Choose the menu **System Tools > Time Settings > Time Settings** to load the following page.

Figure 9-4 Recurring Mode Page

The screenshot shows the 'Daylight Saving Time' configuration interface. The 'DST Status' is checked 'Enable'. The 'Mode' is set to 'Recurring Mode'. The 'Time Offset' is 60 minutes. The 'Starting Time' is set to 'Last Sun in Mar at 01:00'. The 'Ending Time' is set to 'Last Sun in Oct at 01:00'. A 'Save' button is visible at the bottom.

In the **Daylight Saving Time** section, configure the following parameters and click **Save**.

DST Status	Check the box to enable the DST function.
Mode	Select Recurring Mode to specify a cycle time range for the daylight saving time. This configuration will take effect every year.
Time Offset	Specify the time added in minutes when Daylight Saving Time takes effect.
Starting Time	Specify the starting time of Daylight Saving Time. The starting time is relative to standard time.
Ending Time	Specify the ending time of Daylight Saving Time. The ending time is relative to daylight saving time.

9.2.3 Date Mode

Choose the menu **System Tools > Time Settings > Time Settings** to load the following page.

Figure 9-5 Date Mode Page

The screenshot shows the 'Daylight Saving Time' configuration interface. The 'DST Status' is checked 'Enable'. The 'Mode' is set to 'Date Mode'. The 'Time Offset' is 60 minutes. The 'Starting Time' is set to 'Mar 01 at 01:00'. The 'Ending Time' is set to 'Oct 01 at 01:00'. A 'Save' button is visible at the bottom.

In the **Daylight Saving Time** section, select one predefined DST schedule and click **Save**.

DST Status	Check the box to enable the DST function.
-------------------	---

Mode	Select Date Mode to specify an absolute time range for the daylight saving time.
Time Offset	Specify the time added in minutes when Daylight Saving Time takes effect.
Starting Time	Specify the starting time of Daylight Saving Time. The starting time is relative to standard time.
Ending Time	Specify the ending time of Daylight Saving Time. The ending time is relative to daylight saving time.

10 System Log

Choose the menu **System Tools > System Log > System Log** to load the following page.

Figure 10-1 System Log Page

Log Settings

Enable Auto-refresh
 Severity

All Level ▼

Send Log
 Server IP:

Log List

ID	Time	Module	Level	Content
1	2017-01-01 16:48:45	WEB	NOTICE	192.168.0.200 Has logged in to web management system successfully!
2	2017-01-01 16:47:37	WEB	NOTICE	192.168.0.200 Has logged in to web management system successfully!
3	2017-01-01 15:37:23	WEB	NOTICE	192.168.0.200 Has logged in to web management system successfully!
4	2017-01-01 15:27:04	WEB	NOTICE	192.168.0.200 Has logged in to web management system successfully!
5	2017-01-01 01:47:17	WEB	NOTICE	192.168.0.200 Has logged in to web management system successfully!
6	2017-01-01 00:10:12	WEB	NOTICE	192.168.0.200 Has logged in to web management system successfully!
7	2017-01-01 00:07:12	WEB	NOTICE	192.168.0.200 Has logged in to web management system successfully!
9	2017-01-01 00:01:39	WEB	NOTICE	192.168.0.200 Has logged in to web management system successfully!
10	2017-01-01 00:01:38	WEB	NOTICE	192.168.0.200 Has logged in to web management system successfully!
11	2017-01-01 00:00:30	DHCP Client	NOTICE	WAN2:DHCP releasing IP address 192.68.12.32 succeeded.
12	2017-01-01 00:00:30	DHCP Client	NOTICE	WAN1:DHCP releasing IP address 0.0.0.0 succeeded.
13	2017-01-01 00:00:04	DHCP Client	NOTICE	WAN2:DHCP releasing IP address 192.68.12.32 succeeded.

Follow these steps to view the system log:

- 1) In the **Log Settings** section, configure the following parameters and click **Save**.

Enable Auto-refresh

Check the box to enable this function and the page will refresh automatically every 10 seconds.

Severity	<p>Enable Severity and specify the importance of the logs you want to view in the log list.</p> <p>ALL Level: Logs of all levels.</p> <p>EMERGENCY: Errors that render the gateway unusable, such as hardware errors.</p> <p>ALERT: Errors that must be resolved immediately, such as flash write errors.</p> <p>CRITICAL: Errors that put the system at risk, such as a failure to release memory.</p> <p>ERROR: Generic errors.</p> <p>WARNING: Warning messages, such as WinNuke attack warnings.</p> <p>NOTICE: Important notifications, such as IKE policy mismatches.</p> <p>INFO: Informational messages.</p> <p>DEBUG: Debug-level notifications, such as when the gateway receives a DNS packet.</p>
Send Log	<p>Enable the Send Log function and then the newly generated logs will be sent to the specified server.</p>
Server IP	<p>Specify the IP address of the server that the logs will be sent to.</p>
Enable Auto Mail	<p>(Only for 4G models) With the Mail Server, the device can send the system logs. You need to enable Mail Notification Setup in System Tools > Mail Notification, configure related parameters and check System Log in Enable Mail.</p>

- 2) (Optional) Click **Save Log** to save the current logs to the host.

11 Mail Notification (for 4G models)

Choose the menu **System Tools > Mail Notification** to load the following page.

Figure 11-1 Mail Notification Page

Mail Notification Setup

Enable Mail Notification: System Log SMS Alert

Note: Mail Notification is only effective when the gateway can access the internet.

Save

Follow these steps to set up main notification:

- 1) Enable **Mail Notification Setup**, configure the following parameters and click **Save**.

Mail Notification Setup

From:

To:

SMTP Server:

Enable SSL

SMTP Port: (1-65535)

Enable Authentication

User Name:

Authorization Code:

Low Middle High

Enable Mail Notification: System Log SMS Alert

Note: Mail Notification is only effective when the gateway can access the internet.

Save

Mail Notification Setup

Check the box to enable Mail Notification. Once enabled, you need to configure related parameters that will be used in System Log or SMS Alert..

From

Enter the email address used for sending the system log.

To

Enter the recipient's email address, which can be the same as or different from the sender's email address.

SMTP Server

Enter the domain name or IP address of the SMTP server.

Enable SSL

Enable this feature, and the data will be transmitted based on the SSL protocol

Enable Authentication	Enable this feature if the login of the mailbox requires a username and authorization code.
User Name	Enter the email address used for sending the system log.
Authorization Code	Enter the authorization code that enables a third party to log in to the mailbox. Note that the authorization code is not the mailbox's password.
Enable Mail Notification	<p>Configure related parameters, which will be used by the checked modules.</p> <p>System Log - When enabled, you can set the log information to be automatically sent by email in System Tools > System Log.</p> <p>SMS Alert - When enabled, if you select the second or third option in SMS > SMS Settings > SMS Inbox, an email reminder will be sent when the SMS inbox is full information.</p>
